

## **TRACK ACCESS CONTRACT (PASSENGER SERVICES)**

**Dated**

**5th February 2004**

**Between**

**NETWORK RAIL INFRASTRUCTURE LIMITED**

**- and -**

**THE CHILTERN RAILWAY COMPANY LIMITED**

Amended by

- (i) - First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 31 March 2004, approved on 31 March 2004
- (ii) - Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 April 2004, approved on 26 April 2004
- (iii) - Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 April 2004, approved on 25 May 2004
- (iv) - Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 September 2004, approved on 08 October 2004
- (v) - Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 22 October 2004, General Approval 2004 -
- (vi) - Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 22 October 2004, approved on 22 October 2004
- (vii) - Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 November 2004, approved on 19 November 2004
- (viii) - Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 9 December 2004, approved on 10 December 2004
- (ix) - Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 16 December 2004, approved on 17 December 2004
- (x) - Tenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 December 2004, approved on 23 December 2004
- (xi) - Eleventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 January 2005, General Approval 2004 -
- (xii) - Twelfth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 February 2005, approved on 18 February 2005
- (xiii) - Fifteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2005, General Approval 2004 -
- (xiv) - Thirteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2005, approved on 10 June 2005
- (xv) - Fourteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 June 2005, approved on 10 June 2005
- (xvi) - Sixteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 27 July 2005, General Approval 2004 -
- (xvii) - Notice of Consent to Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications dated 03 August 2005
- (xviii) - Seventeenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 28 November 2005, approved 06 December 2005
- (xix) - Twentieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 9 December 2005, General Approval 2004 -
- (xx) - Eighteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 December 2005, approved on 23 December 2005
- (xxi) - Twenty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 25 January 2006, General Approval 2004 -
- (xxii) - Twenty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 1 June 2006, approved on 5 June 2006
- (xxiii) - Twenty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 13 July 2006, General Approval 2006 -
- (xxiv) - Twenty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 18 October 2006, approved on 13 December 2006
- (xxv) - Twenty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 5 December 2006, approved on 7 December 2006
- (xxvi) - Twenty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 December 2006, approved on 22 December 2006 -
- (xxvii) - Twenty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 January 2007, General Approval 2006 -
- (xxviii) - Twenty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 January 2007, General Approval 2006 -

- (xxix) - Thirty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 04 April 2007, General Approval 2006
- (xxx) - Thirtieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 April 2007, approved on 03 May 2007
- (xxxi) - Thirty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 May 2007, General Approval 2006
- (xxxii) - Thirty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 May 2007, General Approval 2006
- (xxxiii) - Thirty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 27 July 2007, General Approval 2006
- (xxxiv) - Thirty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 September 2007, approved on 14 September 2007
- (xxxv) - Thirty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2007, approved on 06 December 2007
- (xxxvi) - Fortieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 December 2007, General Approval 2007
- (xxxvii) - Forty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 December 2007, General Approval 2007
- (xxxviii) - Forty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 March 2008, General Approval 2007
- (xxxix) - Forty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008, General Approval 2007
- (xl) - Forty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008, General Approval 2007
- (xli) - Forty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008, General Approval 2007
- (xlii) - Forty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 08 May 2008, approved on 15 May 2008
- (xliii) - Forty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 May 2008, General Approval 2007
- (xliv) - Fiftieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 July 2008, General Approval 2008
- (xlv) - Fifty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 July 2008, General Approval 2008
- (xlvi) - Fifty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 August 2008, General Approval 2008
- (xlvii) - Fifty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 August 2008, General Approval 2008
- (xlviii) - Forty-Forth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 December 2008, approved on 11 December 2008
- (xlix) - Fifty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2008, approved on 11 December 2008
- (l) - Fifty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 February 2008, approved on 25 February 2008
- (li) - Fifty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 28 October 2008, General Approval 2008 (expired)
- (lii) - Fifty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 September 2008, General Approval 2008 (expired)
- (liii) - Fifty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 November 2008, General Approval 2008 (expired)
- (liv) - Fifty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 November 2008, General Approval 2008 (expired)
- (lv) - Sixtieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 January 2009, approved on 27 January 2009
- (lvi) - Sixty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 December 2008, General Approval 2008
- (lvii) - Thirty-Six SG Supplemental Agreement – not used
- (lviii) - Forty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement – not used
- (lix) - Thirty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement – Review Implementation Notice, dated 28 April 2008
- (lx) - Sixty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement – ORR CP4 Periodic Review, approved 01 April 2009
- (lxi) - Sixty-First SG Supplemental Agreement – not used
- (lxii) - Sixty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 January 2009 – new clause 20 added
- (lxiii) - Sixty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 29 April 2009 – changes to schedule 2
- (lxiv) - Sixty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2009 – changes to schedule 5 and 12
- (lxv) - Sixty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2009 – changes to schedule 5
- (lxvi) - Sixty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 September 2009 – amendments to appendix 1, schedule 8 following the ORR CP4 Periodic Review and the addition of Aylesbury Vale Parkway as a monitoring point
- (lxvii) - Seventieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 September 2009 – amendments to clause 14, passengers charter, of schedule 8
- (lxviii) - Sixty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 September 2009 – amendments and additions to clauses and schedules 5, 7 & 8
- (lxix) - Seventy-First SG Supplemental Agreement – not used
- (lxx) - Seventy-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 December 2009 – amendments and additions to clauses, schedules 2, 6 and 10 and replacement of schedule 1 and 5 in their entirety, approved 10 December 2009
- (lxxi) - Seventy-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 February 2010 – Evergreen 3; amendments and additions to clauses, schedules 2, 4, 5 and 7 and new schedules added 4A, 8A/B, and 11A/B.
- (lxxii) - Seventy-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 March 2010 – to correct errors inserted via the 63<sup>rd</sup> SA to schedules 7 and 8
- (lxxiii) - Seventy-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 May 2010 – changes to schedule 1 and 5 (May 2010 timetable)
- (lxxiv) - Seventy-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2010 – changes to schedule 5, General Approval
- (lxxv) - Seventy-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 08 October 2010 changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (lxxvi) - Seventy-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 15 October 2010 – changes to schedule 5 and to make minor clarificatory amendments to the clauses and schedules 6 and 7 - approved 27 October 2010

- (lxxvii) -Eightieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 04 November 2010 changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (lxxviii) -Seventy-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 06 December 2010 – changes to schedule 5 (December 2010 timetable)
- (lxxix) - ORR Modification notice dated 17 December 2010: This notice was issued in order to modify specified provisions in the track access contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took effect 01 October 2010
- (lxxx) - Notice of consent to requisite adaptations December 2010: This notice of consent was issued by the Regulator pursuant to agreed requisite adaptations in order to modify bespoke sections of the of the track access contract which depart from the Model Passenger Track Access Contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took effect on 1 October 2010
- (lxxxi) - Eighty-First Supplemental Agreement dated 04 February 2011 changes to schedule 5, General Approval
- (lxxxii) -Eighty-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 February 2011 changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (lxxxiii) Eighty-Second Supplemental Agreement dated 25 March 2011 changes to schedule 2, 5 and 7
- (lxxxiv) Eighty-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 12 May 2011 changes to schedule 2, 4, 5, 7 and 8 to reflect the rights to run services between Bicester Town and Oxford. Approved 12 May 2011.
- (lxxxv) -Eighty-Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 12 May 2011 – amendments to clauses and to clauses and other schedules to modify bespoke sections of the of the track access contract which departed from the Model Passenger Track Access Contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took effect on 1 October 2010
- (lxxxvi) Ninetieth Supplemental Agreement dated 04 August 2011, changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (lxxxvii) Eighty-Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 26 August 2011, changes to schedule 2 to revise fleet maintenance routes
- (lxxxviii) Eighty-Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 29 June 2011, changes to schedule 7, part 1 and 7
- (lxxxix) Eighty-Ninth Supplemental Agreement date 30 August 2011, Evergreen Phase 1 changes to schedule 5
- (xc) - Ninety-First Supplemental Agreement dated 24 October 2011, Changes to schedule 7, part 2
- (xci) - Eighty-Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 November 2011, Changes to schedule 7, parts 1 and 2
- (xcii) - ORR Modification notice dated 05 October 2011: This notice was issued in consequence of changes made to the Access Dispute Resolution Rules by Proposal for Change 54 (“PfC 54”) with the specified modifications to take effect from 11 December 2011.
- (xciii) - Ninety-Second Supplemental Agreement date 13 January 2012, Amendments to clause 1.1. Approved by the ORR 23 January 2012.
- (xciv) - Ninety-Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 13 January 2012, changes to schedule 5, table 5.1, General Approval
- (xcv) - Ninety-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 19 January 2012, changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (xcvi) - Ninety-Fifth Supplemental Agreement date 06 December 2012, changes to schedule 5, tables 2.1, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1 and 8.2
- (xcvii) - Ninety-Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 21 March 2013, changes to schedule 2, General Approval
- (xcviii) -Ninety-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 May 2013, changes to schedule 8, Appendix 1
- (xcix) - One Hundredth Supplemental Agreement dated 17 May 2013, May timetable change, changes to tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1 and 6.1
- (c) - One Hundred and First Supplemental Agreement dated 29 August 2013, to amend the financing arrangements for Evergreen Phase 2 to tie in with revised project structure
- (ci) - One Hundred and Third Supplemental Agreement dated 10 October 2013, General Approval, to cover the Contingency arrangements for a delay to the statutory implementation of the 2013 periodic review (PR13)
- (cii) - One Hundred and Second Supplemental Agreement dated 14 November 2013, December timetable change, changes to Schedule 5, tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1, 6.1, 6.2 and 8.2
- (ciii) - One Hundred and Fourth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 20 December 2013, changes to Schedule 5, an introduction of a new paragraph below 2.9
- (civ) - One Hundred and Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 27<sup>th</sup> March 2014 - ORR CP5 Periodic Review, approved 01 April 2014
- (cv) - One Hundred and Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 27<sup>th</sup> March 2014 – to correct two errors in the ORR CP5 Periodic Review (Schedule 8 Appendix 1), approved 01 April 2014
- (cvi) - One Hundred and Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 25 April 2014, May 2014 timetable change, changes to Schedule 5, tables 2.1 and 4.1

- (cvii) One Hundred and Eleventh Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 25 July 2014
- (cviii) One Hundred and Ninth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 02 September 2014
- (cix) One Hundred and Twelfth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 24 October 2014
- (cx) One Hundred and Eighth Supplemental Agreement date 13 November 2014, December 2014 timetable changes, change to the Front End and Schedule 5, tables 2.1 and 4.1
- (cxi) One Hundred and Tenth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 19 December 2014, changes to Schedule 5, an introduction of a new paragraph below 2.9
- (cxii) One Hundred and Thirteenth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 24 March 2015, change to Schedule 2 effective on 29 March 2015 only
- (cxiii) One Hundred and Sixteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 15 October 2015, changes to Schedule 8 to recalibrate Appendix 1 for the introduction of the Oxford Parkway services
- (cxiv) One Hundred and Fourteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 23 October 2015, changes to Schedule 5 for the introduction of the Oxford Parkway Services and consequential changes to the Front End and Schedules 2, 5 and 7 of the Contract to effect the changes within ORR's Model Clause Contract
- (cxv) One Hundred and Fifteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 23 October 2015, to implement amendments to Schedule 4 and 7 for the Oxford Parkway timetable
- (cxvi) One Hundred and Seventeenth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 09 December 2015, amendment to Schedule 5, Tables 2.1 and 2.2 effective from 13 December 2015 until end 12 March 2016
- (cxvii) One Hundred and Eighteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 09 March 2016, changes to Schedule 5, Table 2.1
- (cxviii) -One Hundred and Nineteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 21 April 2016, amendments to Schedule 8 Appendix 1
- (cxix) - One Hundred and Twentieth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 May 2016, May 2016 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxx) - One Hundred and Twenty-Second Supplemental Agreement dated 08 December 2016, December 2016 timetable to effect the introduction of services to Oxford
- (cxxi) - One Hundred and Twenty-First Supplemental Agreement dated 13 March 2017: relating to Schedule 8 Appendix 1 recalibration for the introduction of services to Oxford on 11 December 2016 (having retrospective effect from 02:00 11 December 2016)
- (cxxii) - One Hundred and Twenty-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 04 May 2017, May 2017 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxiii) -One Hundred and Twenty-Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2017, December 2017 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxiv) -One Hundred and Twenty-Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 08 May 2018, May 2018 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxv) - One Hundred and Twenty-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 December 2018, December 2018 timetable changes to Schedule 5 and paragraph 1.1
- (cxxvi) -One Hundred and Twenty-Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 18 December 2018, PR18 contingency arrangements
- (cxxvii) One Hundred and Twenty-Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 18<sup>th</sup> March 2019 - ORR CP6 Periodic Review, to take affect from 01 April 2019
- (cxxviii) One Hundred and Twenty Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 14<sup>th</sup> May 2019, May 2019 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxix) -One Hundred and Thirtieth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 14<sup>th</sup> May 2019, additional May 2019 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxx) - One Hundred and Thirty First Supplemental Agreement, dated 31 July 2019, to make permanent, the changes effected by the One Hundred and Thirtieth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval), shown above
- (cxxxii) -One Hundred and Thirty Second Supplemental Agreement, dated 01 October 2019, December 2019 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxxiii) One Hundred and Thirty Third Supplemental Agreement, dated 08 April 2020, May 2020 timetable changes to Schedule 5
- (cxxxiiii) One Hundred and Thirty Fourth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval), dated 09 April 2020, May 2020 timetable change to Schedule 5
- (cxxxv) One Hundred and Thirty Fifth Supplemental Agreement, dated 30 June 2020, May 2020 timetable change to Schedule 5
- (cxxxvi) One Hundred and Thirty Sixth Supplemental Agreement, dated 27 November 2020, December 2020 timetable changes to Schedule 5

(cxxxvi) One Hundred and Thirty Seventh Supplemental Agreement, dated 8 February 2021, extension of Track Access Contract expiration date, removal of Connections and Stabling Rights tables in Schedule 5, and removal of Journey Time Protection for the Birmingham Service Group.

	<b>Contents</b>	<b>Page Number</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>INTERPRETATION</b>	<b>19</b>
	1.1 Definitions	19
	1.2 Interpretation	29
	1.3 Indemnities	30
<b>2</b>	<b>NETWORK CODE &amp; TRACTION ELECTRICITY RULES</b>	<b>30</b>
	2.1 Incorporation	30
	2.2 Modifications to the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules	30
	2.3 Compliance by other operators	30
<b>3</b>	<b>CONDITIONS PRECEDENT AND DURATION</b>	<b>30</b>
	3.1 Effective date	30
	3.2 Conditions precedent to Clause 5	30
	3.3 Obligations to satisfy conditions precedent to Clause 5	31
	3.4 Consequences of non-fulfilment of conditions precedent to Clause 5	31
	3.5 Expiry	31
	3.6 Suspension and termination	31
	3.7 Evergreen 3 conditions of precedent	31
	3.8 Evergreen 3 conditions of subsequent	32
	3.9 If the circumstances referred to in Clause 3.8 (a) occur	32
	3.10 If the circumstances referred to in Clause 3.8 (b) occur	33
<b>4</b>	<b>STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE</b>	<b>34</b>
	4.1 General standard	34
	4.2 Good faith	35
<b>5</b>	<b>PERMISSION TO USE</b>	<b>35</b>
	5.1 Permission to use the Routes	35
	5.2 Meaning	35
	5.3 Permission under Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f)	35

5.4	Changes to Applicable Engineering Access Statement and Applicable Timetable Planning Rules	36
5.5	Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules and Restrictions of Use	36
5.6	The Services and the Specified Equipment	36
5.7	Performance	36
5.8	Stabling	36
6.	<b>OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF TRAINS AND NETWORK</b>	36
6.1	General	36
6.2	Trespass, vandalism and animals	37
6.3	Safety	37
6.4	Use of Railway Code Systems	37
	6.4.1 General	37
	6.4.2 Provision of Train Consist Data	37
7	<b>TRACK CHARGES &amp; OTHER PAYMENTS</b>	37
8	<b>LIABILITY</b>	37
8.1	Performance Orders in relation to breach	37
8.2	Compensation in relation to breach	38
9	<b>NOT USED</b>	38
10	<b>LIABILITY - OTHER MATTERS</b>	38
10.1	Train Operator indemnity	38
10.2	Network Rail indemnity	38
11	<b>RESTRICTIONS ON CLAIMS</b>	38
11.1	Notification and mitigation	39
11.2	Restrictions on claims by Network Rail	39
11.3	Restrictions on claims by Train Operator	39
11.4	Restriction on claims by both parties	39
11.5	Limitation on liability	40

<b>11.6</b>	<b>Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement</b>	<b>40</b>
11.6.1	<i>General</i>	40
11.6.2	<i>Restriction of application</i>	40
11.6.3	<i>Liability for small claims</i>	40
<b>12</b>	<b>GOVERNING LAW</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>DISPUTE RESOLUTION</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>13.1</b>	<b>ADRR</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>13.2</b>	<b>Unpaid sums</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>13.3</b>	<b>Performance Orders</b>	<b>41</b>
13.3.1	<i>Power to order provisional relief</i>	41
13.3.2	<i>Power to order provisional relief</i>	41
13.3.3	<i>Duties of arbitrator in relation to Performance Orders</i>	42
<b>13.4</b>	<b>Remedies</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>13.5</b>	<b>Exclusion of applications on preliminary points of law</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>CONFIDENTIALITY</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>14.1</b>	<b>Confidential Information</b>	<b>42</b>
14.1.1	<i>General obligation</i>	42
14.1.2	<i>Network Rail - Affiliates</i>	42
14.1.3	<i>Train Operator - Affiliates</i>	43
<b>14.2</b>	<b>Entitlement to divulge</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>14.3</b>	<b>Return of Confidential Information</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>14.4</b>	<b>Retention or destruction of Confidential Information</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>14.5</b>	<b>Ownership of Confidential Information</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>14.6</b>	<b>Network Code, Traction Electricity Rules and Schedule 7</b>	<b>44</b>



<b>15</b>	<b>ASSIGNMENT AND NOVATION</b>	<b>44</b>
15.1	Assignment	44
15.2	Novation	44
15.3	Novation terms	45
<b>16</b>	<b>PAYMENTS, INTEREST AND VAT</b>	<b>45</b>
16.1	Payment	45
16.1.1	<i>No deduction</i>	45
16.1.2	<i>Delivery of invoices</i>	45
16.1.3	<i>Content of invoices and other statements of amounts payable</i>	45
16.1.4	<i>Method of payment</i>	45
16.2	Interest	45
16.3	VAT	46
16.3.1	<i>Payment of VAT</i>	46
16.3.2	<i>Reimbursement of VAT</i>	46
16.3.3	<i>VAT credit note to be issued on repayment</i>	46
<b>17</b>	<b>FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS</b>	<b>46</b>
17.1	Meaning of Force Majeure Event	46
17.2	Nature and extent of relief for Force Majeure	47
17.3	Entitlement to Force Majeure relief	47
17.4	Procedure for claiming relief	47
17.5	Force Majeure Notices and Reports	48
17.5.1	<i>Force Majeure Notice</i>	48
17.5.2	<i>Force Majeure Report</i>	48
17.5.3	<i>Other information</i>	48
17.6	Mitigation	48
17.7	Duration of relief for force majeure	49
17.8	Availability of Performance Order	49

<b>18</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>18.1</b>	<b>Non waiver</b>	<b>49</b>
18.1.1	<i>No waiver</i>	49
18.1.2	<i>Failure or delay in exercising a right or remedy</i>	49
<b>18.2</b>	<b>Variations</b>	<b>49</b>
18.2.1	<i>Amendments to be in writing and to be approved</i>	49
18.2.2	<i>Exceptions</i>	49
18.2.3	<i>No Office of Rail Regulation approval needed</i>	50
18.2.4	<i>Conformed copy of contract</i>	50
<b>18.3</b>	<b>Entire contract and exclusive remedies</b>	<b>50</b>
18.3.1	<i>Entire contract</i>	50
18.3.2	<i>Exclusive remedies</i>	50
18.3.3	<i>Fraud, death and personal injury</i>	50
<b>18.4</b>	<b>Notices</b>	<b>51</b>
18.4.1	<i>Giving of notices</i>	51
18.4.2	<i>Right to modify communication details</i>	51
18.4.3	<i>Deemed receipt</i>	51
18.4.4	<i>Copies</i>	52
<b>18.5</b>	<b>Counterparts</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>18.6</b>	<b>Survival</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>18.7</b>	<b>Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999</b>	<b>52</b>
18.7.1	<i>Application to third parties</i>	52
18.7.2	<i>Application to the Office of Rail Regulation</i>	52
18.7.3	<i>Application to the Secretary of State</i>	52
18.7.4	<i>Application to the Traction Electricity Rules to other train operators</i>	52
<b>19</b>	<b>TRANSITION</b>	<b>53</b>

19.1	Corresponding Rights	53
19.2	Definitions	54
20	INTERIM TREATMENT OF THE 2013 PERIODIC REVIEW	54
20.1	Treatment prior to implementation	54
20.2	Definitions	54
Schedule 1 Contact particulars		1
Schedule 2 The Routes		1
Schedule 3 Collateral Agreements		1
Schedule 4 Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules <sup>MOD A</sup> and Restrictions of Use		1
PART 1	NOT USED	1
PART 2	NOT USED	1
PART 3: Compensation for Restrictions of Use		1
Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Notification Factors		28
Annex B to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Lookup Table for EMB Weights		32
Annex C to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Payment Rate per train mile		35
PART 4:	NOT USED	36
PART 5:	Access charge supplement for Restrictions of Use	37
Schedule 4A – Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications		
1.	Automatic effect	1
1.1	<i>General</i>	1
1.2	<i>Retrospective effect</i>	1
2.	Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications	1
2.1	<i>Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications</i>	1
2.2	<i>Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – failure to agree</i>	1
2.3	<i>Use of the ORR’s Criteria in arbitration</i>	1
2.4	<i>Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – notice to the ORR</i>	2

2.5	<i>Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – the ORR’s consent</i>	2
2.6	<i>Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – the ORR’s refusal of consent</i>	2
2.7	<i>Payment adjustments</i>	2
<b>3.</b>	<b>Procedural matters</b>	<b>2</b>
3.1	<i>Co-operation and information</i>	2
3.2	<i>The ORR’s Criteria</i>	3
3.3	<i>Procedural modifications</i>	3
3.4	<i>Dates</i>	3
3.5	<i>Consolidated contract</i>	3
3.6	<i>Saving</i>	3
<b>4.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Schedule 5</b>	<b>The Services and the Specified Equipment</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2.</b>	<b>Passenger Train Slots</b>	<b>08</b>
	<i>Table 2.1: Passenger Train Slots</i>	08
	<i>Table 2.2: Additional Train Slots</i>	15
	<i>LUL imposed changes</i>	17
<b>3.</b>	<b>Intervals</b>	<b>17</b>
	<i>Table 3.1: Service Intervals - Not Used</i>	17
	<i>Table 3.1a: - Not Used</i>	17
	<i>Table 3.1b: - Not Used</i>	17
	<i>Table 3.2: Clockface Departures – Not Used</i>	17
	<i>Table 3.3: Earliest and latest Passenger Train Slots – Not used</i>	17
<b>4.</b>	<b>Calling Patterns</b>	<b>18</b>
	<i>Table 4.1: Calling Patterns</i>	18
	<i>Calling Patterns</i>	26

	<i>Additional calls</i>	26
<b>5.</b>	<b>Specified Equipment</b>	<b>26</b>
	<i>Train Length</i>	26
<b>6.</b>	<b>Journey Times</b>	<b>27</b>
	<i>Table 6.1: Journey Time Protection</i>	27
	<i>Journey Time Protection</i>	28
<b>7.</b>	<b>Provisions applicable to Journey Time protection</b>	<b>28</b>
	<i>Restrictions on changes to Engineering Access Statement and Timetable Planning Rules</i>	28
	<i>Network Change</i>	29
	<i>Agreement of revised Maximum Key Journey Time</i>	29
	<i>Referral to ADRR</i>	29
	<i>Provisions applicable to Maximum Key Journeys and Maximum Journey Times</i>	29
	<i>Requirement for Office of Rail Regulation's consent</i>	30
	<i>Office of Rail Regulation's Modification Notice</i>	30
	<i>Office of Rail Regulation's notice for substitution of date/period</i>	31
	<i>Requirements for notice under paragraph 7.12</i>	31
<b>8.</b>	<b>Other rights: NOT USED</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>12.</b>	<b>MS Rights</b>	<b>31</b>
	12.1	31 -
	12.2 Not Used	31 -
	12.3 Not Used	31 -
	<i>12.4 MS Asset Proving Period</i>	31
	<i>12.5 Establishing MS Asset Capability Matters</i>	31
	<i>12.6 MS Asset Capability Matters – failure to agree</i>	32
	<i>12.7 Arbitration</i>	32
	<i>12.8 MS Asset Capability Matters – notice to the ORR</i>	32
	<i>12.9 MS Asset Capability Matters – ORR's consent</i>	33

12.10 MS Asset Capability Matters – ORR’s refusal of consent	33
<b>13. MS Rights Effective Date</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>14. Disputes</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>15. Evergreen 3 Phase 1</b>	<b>34</b>
15.1 EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period Principles	34
15.2 Operating Principles	42
<b>16. Evergreen 3 Phase 2</b>	<b>44</b>
16.1 EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period Principles	44
16.2 Operating Principles	53
<b>Schedule 6 Events of Default, suspension and termination</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1. Events of Default</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Train Operator Events of Default	1
1.2 Notification	1
1.3 Network Rail Events of Default	1
1.4 Notification	2
<b>2. Suspension</b>	<b>2</b>
2.1 Right to suspend	2
2.2 Contents of Suspension Notice	2
2.3 Effect of Suspension Notice served by Network Rail	2
2.4 Effect of a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator	3
2.5 Suspension to be proportionate to breach	3
<b>3. Termination</b>	<b>4</b>
3.1 Network Rail’s right to terminate	4
3.2 Train Operator’s right to terminate	4
3.3 Contents of Termination Notice	5
3.4 Effect of Termination Notice	5
<b>4. Consequence of termination</b>	<b>5</b>
4.1 Directions regarding location of Specified Equipment	5
4.2 Failure to comply with directions	5
4.3 Evidence of costs	6
<b>Schedule 7 Track Charges</b>	<b>1</b>

<b>PART 1: INTERPRETATION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1</b> <b>Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b> <b>Interpretation</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>PART 2: TRACK CHARGES</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>1</b> <b>Principal formula</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2</b> <b>Fixed Track Charge Indexation</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3</b> <b>Variable track usage charge</b>	<b>15</b>
3.1 <i>Variable track usage charge</i>	<i>15</i>
3.2 <i>Not Used</i>	<i>16</i>
3.3 <i>Default Charge</i>	<i>16</i>
<b>4</b> <b>Traction Electricity Charge</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>4A</b> <b>Volume and Cost Reconciliation for the Relevant Year ending on 31 March 2014</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>5</b> <b>Efficiency benefit share</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>6</b> <b>Capacity Charge</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>7</b> <b>Network Rail Rebate</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>8</b> <b>Electrification Asset Usage Charge</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>8F Facility Charge</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>8G MS Incremental MRR Charge [NOT USED]</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>8H EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>8I EG3 Phase 2 Facility Charge plus the adjustment sum</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>8I.1 The Water Eaton Facility Charge</b>	
<b>8I.2 Oxford Facility Charge</b>	
<b>8I.3 Adjustment Sum</b>	
<b>8I.4 The Water Eaton Final Facility Charge</b>	
<b>8I.5 Oxford Final Facility Charge</b>	
<b>8J Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>8K EG3 Incremental MRR Charge</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>8L MS Additional Facility Charge</b>	<b>55</b>

<b>9</b>	<b>Bilateral supplements to the List of Capacity Charge Rates, Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List and Track Usage Price List</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Payment of Track Charges and other sums due under the contract</b>	<b>60</b>
10.1	<i>Payment of Track Charges and other sums due under the contract</i>	60
10.2	<i>Train Consist Data</i>	61
10.3	<i>Invoices and right to object to invoices</i>	61
10.4	<i>Unrepresentative Train Consist Data</i>	62
10.5	<i>Disputed amounts repayment and interest rate</i>	63
	<b>PART 3: ROUTE –LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM</b>	<b>63</b>
	<b>PART 3A: ENGLISH &amp; WELSH GRANT DILUTION</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Grant Amounts</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>English &amp; Welsh Grant Dilution</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>English &amp; Welsh Grant Compensation Amount</b>	<b>69</b>
	<b>PART 4: NOT USED</b>	<b>70</b>
	<b>PART 5: ADDITIONAL CHARGES - NOT USED</b>	<b>70</b>
	<b>PART 6: SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS</b>	<b>70</b>
	<b>PART 7: FUTURE ACCESS CHARGES REVIEW</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Access charges reviews capable of coming into operation before 1 April 2019</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Interpretation</b>	<b>71</b>
	<b>PART 7A: REBS ROUTES TABLE</b>	<b>72</b>
	<b>PART 7B: ROUTE-LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM OPT-OUT NOTICE</b>	<b>73</b>
	<b>Appendix 7C : Default train consist data</b>	<b>75</b>
	<b>Appendix 7D : Metered trains M for the purposes of paragraph 4.1.1 of Part 2</b>	<b>76</b>
	<b>Schedule 8 Performance regime</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Interpretation</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	<i>Definitions</i>	1
1.2	<i>Interpretation</i>	3



1.3	<i>Suspension Notices</i>	3
<b>2.</b>	<b>Calculation of Minutes Late</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3.</b>	<b>Calculation of Minutes Delay</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>4.</b>	<b>Recording of performance information</b>	<b>5</b>
4.1	<i>Recording of lateness, Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i>	5
4.2	<i>Recording of allocated responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i>	5
4.3	<i>Failed Recording Points</i>	5
4.4	<i>Provision of information by Train Operator</i>	6
<b>5</b>	<b>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</b>	<b>6</b>
5.1	<i>Assessment of incidents causing Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i>	6
5.2	<i>Network Rail responsibility incidents</i>	7
5.3	<i>Train Operator responsibility incidents</i>	7
5.4	<i>Joint responsibility incidents</i>	8
5.5	<i>Unidentified incidents: Minutes Delay</i>	8
5.6	<i>Unidentified incidents: Cancelled Stops</i>	8
5.7	<i>Planned incidents</i>	8
5.8	<i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: aggregate Minutes Delay</i>	9
5.9	<i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Network Rail Minutes Delay</i>	9
5.10	<i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Train Operator Minutes Delay</i>	9
5.11	<i>Network Rail Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level</i>	9
5.12	<i>Train Operator Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level</i>	9
<b>6.</b>	<b>Statement of allocated responsibility</b>	<b>9</b>
6.1	<i>Initial statement</i>	9
6.2	<i>Further statements</i>	10
6.3	<i>Adjustment statements</i>	10

6.4	<i>Disputes about statements of allocated responsibility</i>	10
<b>7.</b>	<b>Allocation of Minutes Late to Network Rail</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>8.</b>	<b>Allocation of Minutes Late to the Train Operator</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>9.</b>	<b>Network Rail Performance Sums</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>10.</b>	<b>Train Operator Performance Sums</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>11.</b>	<b>Notification of Performance Sums</b>	<b>14</b>
11.1	<i>Notification</i>	14
11.2	<i>Disputes</i>	15
<b>12.</b>	<b>Payment procedures</b>	<b>15</b>
12.1	<i>Payments and set-off</i>	15
12.2	<i>Payments in the event of dispute</i>	15
<b>13.</b>	<b>Payment rates</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>14.</b>	<b>Not Used</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Notices</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Disputes</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>Amendments to Appendix 1</b>	<b>17</b>
17.1	<i>Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Appendix 1</i>	17
17.2	<i>Procedure for amendments to Appendix 1</i>	17
17.3	<i>Adjustments to the Performance Monitoring System</i>	18
17.4	<i>Costs of implementing amendment</i>	18
17.5	<i>Relationship with Appendix 3 and remainder of Schedule 8</i>	18
<b>17A</b>	<b>ETCS Amendments</b>	<b>19</b>
17A.1	<i>Circumstances in which ETCS Amendments can be made</i>	19
17A.2	<i>ETCS Amendments agreed by the parties</i>	19
17A.3	<i>ORR right to approve, determine or make ETCS Amendments</i>	19
<b>18</b>	<b>Compensation for sustained poor performance</b>	<b>20</b>
18.1	<i>Definitions</i>	20

18.2	<i>Indemnity</i>	20
18.3	<i>Determination of Relevant Loses</i>	20
18.4	<i>Restrictions on claims by Train Operator</i>	20
<b>19</b>	<b>SSP Indexation</b>	<b>21</b>
19.1	<i>SSP Indexation</i>	21
19.2	<i>Application of SPP Indexation</i>	21
	<b>Appendix 1 :</b>	<b>22</b>
	<b>Appendix 2 : Charter Destination Points</b>	<b>30</b>
	<b>Appendix 3 : SPP Thresholds</b>	<b>31</b>
	<b>Schedule 8A Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Automatic effect</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	<i>General</i>	1
1.2	<i>Retrospective effect</i>	1
<b>2.</b>	<b>Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</b>	<b>1</b>
2.1	<i>Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</i>	1
2.2	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – failure to agree</i>	1
2.3	<i>Use of the ORR’s Criteria in arbitration</i>	1
2.4	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – notice to the ORR</i>	2
2.5	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR’s consent</i>	2
2.6	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR’s refusal of consent</i>	2
2.7	<i>Payment adjustments</i>	2
<b>4.</b>	<b>Procedural matters</b>	<b>2</b>
4.1	<i>Co-operation and information</i>	2
4.2	<i>The ORR’s Criteria</i>	3
4.3	<i>Procedural modifications</i>	3
4.4	<i>Dates</i>	3
4.5	<i>Consolidated contract</i>	3

4.6	<i>Saving</i>	3
<b>4.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Schedule 8B Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</b>		<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Automatic effect</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	<i>General</i>	1
1.2	<i>Retrospective effect</i>	1
<b>2.</b>	<b>Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</b>	<b>1</b>
2.1	<i>Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</i>	1
2.2	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – failure to agree</i>	1
2.3	<i>Use of the ORR’s Criteria in arbitration</i>	1
2.4	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – notice to the ORR</i>	2
2.5	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR’s consent</i>	2
2.6	<i>Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR’s refusal of consent</i>	2
2.7	<i>Payment adjustments</i>	2
<b>3.</b>	<b>Procedural matters</b>	<b>2</b>
3.1	<i>Co-operation and information</i>	2
3.2	<i>The ORR’s Criteria</i>	3
3.3	<i>Procedural modifications</i>	3
3.4	<i>Dates</i>	3
3.5	<i>Consolidated contract</i>	3
3.6	<i>Saving</i>	3
<b>4.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Schedule 9 Limitation on liability</b>		<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2.</b>	<b>Application</b>	<b>1</b>

<b>3.</b>	<b>Limitation on Network Rail's liability</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>4.</b>	<b>Limitation on Train Operator's liability</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>5.</b>	<b>Disapplication of limitation</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>6.</b>	<b>Exclusion of legal and other costs</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>7.</b>	<b>Exclusion of certain Relevant Losses</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>8.</b>	<b>Continuing breaches</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>9.</b>	<b>Final determination of claims</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Schedule 10</b>	<b>Network Code modifications</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Automatic effect</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	<i>General</i>	<i>1</i>
1.2	<i>Retrospective effect</i>	<i>1</i>
<b>2.</b>	<b>Modification notice</b>	<b>1</b>
2.1	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>1</i>
2.2	<i>Contents of modification notice</i>	<i>1</i>
<b>3.</b>	<b>Adaptation procedure</b>	<b>1</b>
3.1	<i>Application</i>	<i>1</i>
3.2	<i>Negotiation of adaptations</i>	<i>1</i>
3.3	<i>Agreed adaptations - notice to the Office of the Rail Regulation</i>	<i>2</i>
3.4	<i>Agreed adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's consent</i>	<i>2</i>
3.5	<i>Agreed requisite adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's refusal of consent</i>	<i>2</i>
3.6	<i>Requisite adaptations - failure to agree or submit</i>	<i>2</i>
3.7	<i>Notice of determined requisite adaptations</i>	<i>2</i>
3.8	<i>Effect of requisite adaptations</i>	<i>3</i>
<b>4.</b>	<b>Procedural matters</b>	<b>3</b>
4.1	<i>More than one notice</i>	<i>3</i>
4.2	<i>Differences etc as to requisite adaptations</i>	<i>3</i>
4.3	<i>Co-operation and information</i>	<i>3</i>
4.4	<i>Office of Rail Regulation's criteria</i>	<i>3</i>
4.5	<i>Procedural modifications</i>	<i>4</i>
4.6	<i>Dates</i>	<i>4</i>
4.7	<i>Requirement for prior consultation</i>	<i>4</i>

4.8	<i>Consolidated contract</i>	5
4.9	<i>Saving</i>	5
<b>5.</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Schedule 11 NOT USED</b>		<b>1</b>
<b>Schedule 11A – Chiltern Main Line Works Rebate Mechanism</b>		<b>1</b>
1.	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
2.	<b>Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate</b>	<b>2</b>
3.	<b>Network Rail Obligations</b>	<b>2</b>
4.	<b>Train Operator Obligations</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Schedule 11B – Bi-Ox Works Rebate Mechanism</b>		<b>1</b>
1.	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
2.	<b>Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate</b>	<b>2</b>
3.	<b>Network Rail Obligations</b>	<b>2</b>
4.	<b>Train Operator Obligation</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Schedule 12 NOT USED</b>		<b>1</b>
<b>Schedule 13 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications</b>		<b>1</b>
1.	<b>Automatic effect</b>	<b>1</b>
2	<b>Procedures governing relevant Schedule 8 modifications</b>	<b>1</b>
3.	<b>Procedural matters</b>	<b>2</b>
4	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>3</b>

THIS CONTRACT is made the 5 day of February 2004

BETWEEN:

- (1) - Network Rail Infrastructure Limited, a company registered in England under number 2904587 having its registered office at 1 Eversholt Street, London NW1 2DW ("Network Rail");<sup>114th</sup> and
- (2) - The Chiltern Railway Company Limited, a company registered in England and Wales under number 3007939 having its registered office at 1, Admiral Way, Doxford International Business Park, Sunderland, England, SR3 3XP ("Train Operator")<sup>108th</sup>

WHEREAS:

- (A) - Network Rail is the owner of the Network; and
- (B) - Network Rail has been directed by the Rail Regulator to grant to the Train Operator permission to use certain track comprised in the Network on the terms and conditions of this contract.

IT IS AGREED AS FOLLOWS:

## 1 INTERPRETATION

### 1.1 Definitions<sup>72ND</sup>

In this contract unless the context otherwise requires:

**73rd Supplemental Track Access Agreement** means the 73rd supplemental track access agreement entered into by the parties dated 12 February 2010 in relation to the EG3 Project<sup>73rd</sup>

**78th Supplemental Track Access Agreement** means the 78th supplemental track access agreement entered into by the parties dated 06 December 2010<sup>85th</sup>

**"101st Supplemental Track Access Agreement"** means the 101<sup>st</sup> supplemental agreement to the track access contract entered into by the parties on the Effective Date in relation to the Bicester to Oxford route upgrade; <sup>101st</sup>

**"Acceptance"** has the meaning given to the term "Completion of the Phase One Works" in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement, and the term **Accepted** shall be construed accordingly; <sup>101st</sup>

**"Access Agreement"** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code;

**"129th access charges review"** has the meaning ascribed to it by Schedule 4A to the - Act; -

**"Access Dispute Resolution Rules"** and **"ADRR"** have the meaning ascribed to them in Part A of the Network Code; -

**"Access Proposal"** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code<sup>MOD A</sup>; -

**"Act"** means the Railways Act 1993; -

**Actual Proving** means the proving mechanism for each of EG3 Phase 1 and EG3 - Phase 2 as set out in Schedule 5 (The Services and the Specified Equipment) <sup>73rd</sup>

**“Affected Party”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Affiliate”** means, in relation to any company:

- (a) - a company which is either a holding company or a subsidiary of such company;  
or
- (b) - a company which is a subsidiary of a holding company of which such company is also a subsidiary,

and for these purposes “holding company” and “subsidiary” have the meanings ascribed to them in section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

**“Ancillary Movements”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable Engineering Access Statement<sup>MOD A</sup>”** means the Engineering Access Statement<sup>MOD A</sup> in force in respect of the Routes on 1<sup>st</sup> April 2009, as from time to time amended or replaced under Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup>”** means the Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup> in force in respect of the Routes on 1<sup>st</sup> April 2009, as from time to time amended or replaced under Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable Timetable”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;

**“associate”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 17 of the Act;

**“Chiltern Main Line Works”** means works to increase line speed and capacity on the Chiltern Main Line between London Marylebone and Aynho Junction (as such works may be amended during development and construction of the Chiltern Main Line Works);

**“Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement”** means the agreement of that name approved by ORR;

**“Collateral Agreements”** means the agreements and arrangements listed in Schedule 3;

**Commencement Date** means the date of 73rd Supplemental Track Access Agreement<sup>73rd</sup>

**“Confidential Information”** means information relating to the affairs of one party to this contract or any of its Affiliates which has been provided by any such person to the other party under or for the purposes of this contract, or any matter or thing contemplated by this contract or to which this contract relates, the disclosure of which is likely materially to compromise or otherwise prejudice the commercial interests of any such person;

<sup>106th</sup>**“contract”** means this document including all schedules and appendices to it, the Network Code and the Traction Electricity Rules;

**“Contract Year”** means each yearly period commencing on 1<sup>st</sup> April 2004 and subsequently on each anniversary of such date;

**“Contribution Agreement”** means the contribution agreement dated on or around the date of the 101<sup>st</sup> Supplemental Track Access Agreement entered into by the parties in relation to the implementation of EG3 Phase 2; <sup>101st</sup>



**“Default Interest Rate”** is two percent above the base lending rate of - Barclays Bank PLC as varied from time to time; -

**“D-X”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code; <sup>MOD A</sup>

**“Environmental Condition”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part E of the - Network Code; -

**“Environmental Damage”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part E of the - Network Code; -

<sup>77th</sup> **“Outline Evergreen 3 Works”** means: -

the Chiltern Main Line Works; and -

works to connect the Chiltern Main Line to the Bicester-Oxford route by the - construction of a new junction at Bicester and upgrade works on the Bicester Town - Oxford route including the construction of a new station at Water Eaton Parkway (as - such works may be amended during development and construction of such works), -

such works to be delivered under a construction contract procured by the Train - Operator and transferred to Network Rail. -

**“EG3 Assets”** means: <sup>101st</sup>

(a) in respect of EG3 Phase 1, each discrete package of works and equipment and associated land to the extent not already owned by Network Rail to be Taken In Use as part of the infrastructure improvements required to deliver the EG3 Phase 1; and

(b) in respect of EG3 Phase 2, means each part of the Project and all of the infrastructure improvements of which legal and beneficial title vest in Network Rail pursuant to Clause 10.5 of the Contribution Agreement and in respect of which a Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate and an Oxford Works Completion Certificate (as appropriate) is issued by Network Rail;

**EG3 Asset Protection Agreement** means the asset protection agreement to be entered into by the parties in relation to the EG3 Project <sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement** means the asset purchase agreement to be entered into by the parties in relation to the EG3 Project <sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Phase 1** has the meaning given to "Phase One" in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement <sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Phase 1 Amendments** means the amendments to the Contract set out in Clause 2.2 of the 73rd Supplemental Track Access Agreement <sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria** has the meaning given to it in Schedule 5 (The Services and the Specified Equipment) <sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Precedent** means: <sup>73rd</sup>

- (a) - Theoretical Proving has been carried out by the Train Operator and confirmed in writing as successful by Network Rail in relation to EG3 Phase 1;
- (b) - the EG3 Phase 1 Assets have been Taken Into Use; and
- (c) - the EG3 Phase 1 Works have been Accepted

<sup>92nd</sup> **EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent** means:

- (a) Actual Proving in relation to EG3 Phase 1 is completed and passed to the satisfaction of Network Rail within the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period;
- (b) the EG3 Phase 1 Assets have been Taken Into Use; and
- (c) the EG3 Phase 1 Works have been Accepted.

<sup>92nd</sup> **EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date** means:

- (a) - in the case of EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent (a), the date falling six (6) months after the last day of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period; and
- (b) - in the case of EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent (b) and (c), 31 March 2012.

<sup>92nd</sup> **EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date** means 4 September 2011.

<sup>92nd</sup> **EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period** means the thirteen (13) Periods starting on the first day of the first Period following 4 September 2011, as extended and agreed from time to time by the parties following approval by the ORR.

**EG3 Phase 1 Timetable** means the first timetable covering the EG3 Phase 1 Assets to be immediately implemented following satisfaction of the EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Precedent<sup>73rd</sup>

**EG3 Phase 1 Works** has the meaning give to "Phase One Works" in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement<sup>73rd</sup>

**"EG3 Phase 2"** has the meaning given to the term "Project" in the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**"EG3 Phase 2 Amendments"** means the amendments to the Contract set out in Clause 2.3 of the 73<sup>rd</sup> Supplemental Track Access Agreement as subsequently amended by the 101<sup>st</sup> Supplemental Track Access Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria** has the meaning given to it in Schedule 5 (The Services and the Specified Equipment)<sup>73rd</sup>

<sup>122nd</sup> **EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent** means:

- (a) -Actual Proving in relation to EG3 Phase 2 is completed and passed to the satisfaction of Network Rail within the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period;
- (b) The Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate has been issued by Network Rail in relation to the Water Eaton Works;
- (c) -The Oxford Phase 0 Works have been achieved and brought into use by Network Rail;
- (d) The Oxford Works Completion Certificate has been issued by Network Rail in relation to the Oxford Works;

**EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date** means the date falling six (6) months after the last day of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period<sup>73rd</sup>

<sup>122nd</sup> **"EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period"** means the thirteen Reporting Periods starting on the first day of the First Reporting Period following the completion of the driver training once the Oxford Works Completion Certificate has been issued;

<sup>122nd</sup> **"EG3 Phase 2 Timetable"** means:

- (a) -in respect of the Water Eaton Works, the first timetable to be immediately implemented following satisfaction of the Water Eaton Conditions Precedent; and
- (b) in respect of the Oxford Phase 0 Works, the first timetable to be immediately implemented following satisfaction of the Oxford Conditions Precedent; and
- (c) -in respect of the Oxford Works, the timetable in place from the Oxford Works Completion Certificate Date;

**“EG3 Phase 2 Works”** has the meaning given to the term "Project Requirements" in the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**“EG3 Project”** means "Project Evergreen 3" comprising EG3 Phase 1 and EG3 Phase 2;<sup>101st</sup>

<sup>122nd</sup> **“EG3 Right”** means the right to be granted to the Train Operator under the Contract from the EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date, the Water Eaton Effective Date, the Oxford Effective Date or from the first day of the First Reporting Period following the completion of the driver training once the Oxford Works Completion Certificate has been issued (as appropriate) which allows the Train Operator to undertake Actual Proving in relation to EG3 Phase 1 or EG3 Phase 2 (as appropriate), and which is classed as a Firm Right provided the EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Subsequent and the EG3 Phase 2 Conditions Subsequent (as appropriate) are achieved;

**EG3 Rights Phase 1** means the EG3 Rights relating to EG3 Phase 1<sup>73rd</sup> -

**EG3 Rights Phase 2** means the EG3 Rights relating to EG3 Phase 2<sup>73rd</sup> -

**“European licence”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 6(2) of the Act;<sup>114th</sup> -

**Evergreen 3 Works** means the EG3 Phase 1 Works and the EG3 Phase 2 Works<sup>73rd</sup> -

**“Event of Default”** means a Train Operator Event of Default or a Network Rail Event of Default; -

**“Expiry Date”** means the Subsidiary Change Date in 2023<sup>137th</sup>; -

**“Force Majeure Event”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1; -

**“Force Majeure Notice”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1; -

**“Force Majeure Report”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1; -

**“Franchise Agreement”** means the franchise agreement with the Secretary of State - referred to in Schedule 3; -

**“Franchisee”** means the person defined as such in the Franchise Agreement; -

**“Innocent Party”** means, in relation to a breach of an obligation under this contract, - the party who is not in breach of that obligation; -

**“Insolvency Event”**, in relation to either of the parties, has occurred where: -

- (a) - any step which has a reasonable prospect of success is taken by any person with a view to its administration under Part II of the Insolvency Act 1986;
- (b) - it stops or suspends or threatens to stop or suspend payment of all or a material part of its debts, or is unable to pay its debts, or is deemed unable to pay its debts under section 123(1) or (2) of the Insolvency Act 1986, except that in the interpretation of this paragraph:

- (i) - section 123(1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 shall have effect as if for “£750” there were substituted “£100,000” or such higher figure as the parties may agree in writing from time to time; and
- (ii) - it shall not be deemed to be unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this paragraph if any such demand as is mentioned in section 123(1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 is satisfied before the expiry of 21 days from such demand;
- (c) - its directors make any proposal under section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986, or it makes any agreement for the deferral, rescheduling or other readjustment (or makes a general assignment or an arrangement or composition with or for the benefit of the relevant creditors) of all or a material part of its debts, or a moratorium is agreed or declared in respect of or affecting all or a material part of its debts;
- (d) - any step is taken to enforce security over or a distress, execution or other similar process is levied or sued out against the whole or a substantial part of its assets or undertaking, including the appointment of a receiver, administrative receiver, manager or similar person to enforce that security;
- (e) - any step is taken by any person with a view to its winding up or any person presents a winding-up petition which is not dismissed within 14 days, or it ceases or threatens to cease to carry on all or a material part of its business, except for the purpose of and followed by a reconstruction, amalgamation, reorganisation, merger or consolidation on terms approved by the other party before that step is taken (which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed); or
- (f) - any event occurs which, under the law of any relevant jurisdiction, has an analogous or equivalent effect to any of the events listed above,

unless:

- (i) - in any case, a railway administration order (or application for such order) has been made or such order (or application) is made within 14 days after the occurrence of such step, event, proposal or action (as the case may be) in relation to the party in question under section 60, 61 or 62 of the Act and for so long as any such order (or application) remains in force or pending; or
- (ii) - in the case of paragraphs (a), (d) and (e), the relevant petition, proceeding or other step is being actively contested in good faith by that party with timely recourse to all appropriate measures and procedures;

**“Liability Cap”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of Schedule 9;

**“Longstop Date”** means 31<sup>st</sup> March 2004

**“LUL”** means London Underground Limited;

**“M40 Trains”** – means M40 Trains Limited and its successors and permitted assignees or transferees;

**“MS”** this suffix means Birmingham Moor Street Station

**“MS Acceptance”** means the acceptance by Network Rail of the completed MS Enhanced Assets as evidenced by Network Rail issuing the MS Acceptance Certificate;

**“MS Acceptance Certificate”** means the certificate issued by Network Rail upon application of the Train Operator;

**“MS Asset Protection Agreement”** means the asset protection agreement entered into on or about the date of the Sixty Third Supplemental Agreement between Network Rail and the Train Operator;

**“MS Asset Purchase Agreement”** means the Asset Purchase Agreement entered into on 31st March 2009 between Network Rail and the Train Operator;

**“MS Commencement Date”** means the date upon which the MS Acceptance Certificate is issued by Network Rail

**“MS Construction Contract”** means the construction contract entered into on or about the date of the Sixty Third Supplemental Agreement between the Train Operator and the MS Construction Contractor, as the same may be amended from time to time;

**“MS Construction Contractor”** means the entity, other than the Train Operator, that is a party to the MS Construction Contract and its successors and permitted assignees or transferees;

**“MS Construction Contractor's Submissions”** means the drawings, specifications, data and programmes which set out how the MS Construction Contractor intends to carry out the MS Project, as the same may be amended from time to time;

**“MS Enhanced Assets”** means the assets to be created, repaired, renewed or reinstated by the MS Construction Contractor in accordance with the MS Project Specification and the MS Construction Contractor's Submissions;

**“MS Project”** means the design, construction, commissioning and MS Acceptance of the MS Works and their financing in accordance with the provisions of the MS Project Documents;

**“MS Project Documents”** means the MS Asset Protection Agreement, the MS Asset Purchase Agreement, the MS Construction Contract and the MS Construction Contractor Collateral Agreement;

**“MS Project Specification”** means the specification, which sets out a description of the MS Works, the technical description of the MS Enhanced Assets and the Train Operator's and Network Rail's requirements in respect of the MS Project, as the same may be amended from time to time;

**“MS Works”** means the design, construction and completion of the Project (including all necessary permanent and temporary works) and any other work carried out by the MS Construction Contractor in accordance with the MS Construction Contract;

**“Network”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code;

**“Network Code”** means the document now known as the Network Code and formerly known as the Railtrack Track Access Conditions 1995;

**“Network Rail Event of Default”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.3 of Schedule 6;

**“New Working Timetable”** means, in respect of any day, the version of the Working Timetable for that day provided by Network Rail in accordance with Condition D2.7.1, as amended pursuant to Condition D2.7.4<sup>MOD A</sup>;

**“Office of Rail Regulation”** has the meaning ascribed to it under section 15 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003, and references to "ORR" shall be construed as references to the Office of Rail Regulation;

**“Oxford Effective Date”** means that date upon which the Oxford Conditions Precedent have all been met;<sup>101st</sup>

<sup>122nd</sup> **“Oxford Conditions Precedent”** means:

- (a) the satisfaction of the all of the Water Eaton Conditions Precedent;
- (b) Theoretical Proving has been carried out by the Train Operator and confirmed in writing as successful by Network Rail in relation to EG3 Phase 2 but only to the extent that they relate to the Oxford Phase 0 Works;
- (c) the Oxford Phase 0 Works have been achieved and brought into use by Network Rail; and
- (d) First -Greater Western Limited has voluntarily relinquished all of its rights to operate railway passenger services between Oxford and Bicester Town in relation to its track access contract with Network Rail;

<sup>122nd</sup> **“Oxford Phase 0 Works”** means the bringing into use of the Oxford Works as described in Network Change proposals reference NC/G1/2009/LNW442v3 issued on 17<sup>th</sup> June 2015 and established on 21<sup>st</sup> July 2015, and NC/G1/2015/WEST/586R issued on 14<sup>th</sup> August 2015 and established on 16<sup>th</sup> September 2015;

**“Oxford Works Completion Certificate”** means the sectional completion certificate issued by Network Rail on the completion of the Oxford Works as contemplated under Clause 10.4 of the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**“Oxford Works”** means the works as particularly described in the section entitled “Phase 2: Oxford” in paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 3 of the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**“Performance Order”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 13.3.2;<sup>MOD B</sup>

**“Railway Code Systems”** means necessary systems within the meaning of the Systems Code;

**“railway facility”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 83 of the Act;

**“relevant ADRR Forum”** means the Forum, having the meaning ascribed to it in the ADRR, to which a Relevant Dispute is allocated for resolution in accordance with the ADRR;<sup>MOD B</sup>

**“Relevant Dispute”** means any difference between the parties arising out of or in connection with this contract;

**“Relevant Force Majeure Event”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Relevant Losses”** means, in relation to:

- (a) - a breach of this contract; or
- (b) - in the case of Clause 10, any of the matters specified in Clause 10.1(a), (b) or (c) or Clause 10.2(a), (b) or (c) (each a “breach” for the purpose of this definition); or
- (c) - in the case of Schedule 8, the matter specified in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8 (a “breach” for the purposes of this definition only),

all costs, losses (including loss of profit and loss of revenue), expenses, payments, damages, liabilities, interest and the amounts by which rights or entitlements to amounts have been reduced, in each case incurred or occasioned as a result of or by such breach;

**“Relevant Obligation”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17;

**“Rolled Over Access Proposal”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code<sup>MOD A</sup>;

**“Routes”** means that part of the Network specified in Schedule 2;

**“safety authorisation”** has the meaning ascribed to it by regulation 2 of the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006;

**“safety certificate”** has the meaning ascribed to it by regulation 2 of the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006;

**“Safety Obligations”** means all applicable obligations concerning health and safety (including any duty of care arising at common law, and any obligation arising under statute, statutory instrument or mandatory code of practice) in Great Britain;

**“Services”** means the railway passenger services specified in Schedule 5;

**“SNRP”** has the meaning ascribed to it in the Railways (Licensing of Railway Undertakings) Regulations 2005:<sup>114th</sup>

**“Specified Equipment”**<sup>114th</sup> means the railway vehicles which the Train Operator is entitled to use in the provision of Services as specified in paragraph 5.1 of Schedule 5;

**“SPP Threshold”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8;

**“Stabling”** means the parking or laying up of the Specified Equipment or such other railway vehicles as the Train Operator is permitted by this contract to use on the Network, such parking or laying up being necessary or reasonably required for giving full effect to the movements of Specified Equipment required for the provision of the Services;

**“Suspension Notice”** means a notice in writing served by the relevant party on the other party under paragraph 2 of Schedule 6;

**“Systems Code”**<sup>114th</sup> means the Code of Practice relating to the management and development of railway code systems as emended from time to time in accordance with its terms;

**Taking Into Use** has the meaning given to it in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement, and the term **Taken Into Use** shall be construed accordingly<sup>73rd</sup>

**“Termination Notice”** means a notice in writing served by the relevant party on the other party under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6;

**Theoretical Proving** means the timetable modelling and the performance modelling in relation to each of EG3 Phase 1 and EG3 Phase 2 to be agreed in writing between the parties.<sup>73rd</sup>

**“Timetable Participant”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code<sup>MOD A</sup>;

<sup>106th</sup>**“Track Charges”** means the charges payable by or on behalf of the Train Operator to Network Rail, as set out in paragraph 1 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 or under the Traction Electricity Rules; and

<sup>106th</sup>**“Traction Electricity Rules”** means the document known as the Traction Electricity Rules published by Network Rail on its website and as may be amended from time to time;

**“Train Consist Data”** means information as to the number(s) and type(s) of railway vehicle comprised in a train movement; -

**“Train Operator Event of Default”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 - of Schedule 6; -

**“Train Slot”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“TW-X”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code<sup>MOD A</sup>;

**“Value Added Tax”** means value added tax as provided for in the Value Added Tax Act 1994, and any tax similar or equivalent to value added tax or any turnover tax replacing or introduced in addition to them, and “VAT” shall be construed accordingly;

**“Water Eaton Effective Date”** means that date upon which the Water Eaton Conditions Precedent have all been met;<sup>101st</sup>

**“Water Eaton Conditions Precedent”** means:<sup>101st</sup>

- (a) the satisfaction of the all of the EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Precedent and the EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Subsequent;
- (b) Theoretical Proving has been carried out by the Train Operator and confirmed in writing as successful by Network Rail in relation to EG3 Phase 2 but only to the extent that they relate to the Water Eaton Works;
- (c) the Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate has been issued by Network Rail; and
- (d) First Greater -Western Limited has voluntarily relinquished all of its rights to operate railway passenger services between Oxford and Bicester Town in relation to its track access contract with Network Rail;

**“Water Eaton Works”** means the works as particularly described in the section entitled “Phase 1: Water Eaton Parkway” in paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 3 of the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**“Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate”** means the sectional completion certificate issued by Network Rail on completion of the Water Eaton Works as contemplated under Clause 10.4 of the Contribution Agreement;<sup>101st</sup>

**“Working Day”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A<sup>MOD A</sup> of the Network Code; and

**“Working Timetable”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code.



## 1.2 Interpretation

In this contract, unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) - the singular includes the plural and vice versa;
- (b) - any one gender includes the other;
- (c) - all headings are for convenience of reference only and shall not be used in the construction of this contract;
- (d) - reference to an item of primary or secondary legislation is to that item as amended or replaced from time to time;
- (e) - reference to a contract, instrument or other document is to that contract, instrument or other document as amended, novated, supplemented or replaced from time to time;
- (f) - reference to a party is to a party to this contract, its successors and permitted assigns;
- (g) - reference to a recital, Clause or Schedule is to a recital, clause or schedule of or to this contract; reference in a schedule to a Part of or an Appendix to a schedule is to a part of or an appendix to the schedule in which the reference appears; reference in a Part of a Schedule to a paragraph is to a paragraph of that part; reference to a Part of an appendix is to a part of the appendix in which the reference appears; and reference in a schedule to a Table is a reference to the table included in or annexed to that schedule;
- (h) - where a word or expression is defined, cognate words and expressions shall be construed accordingly;
- (i) - references to the word “person” or “persons” or to words importing persons include individuals, firms, corporations, government agencies, committees, departments, authorities and other bodies incorporated or unincorporated, whether having separate legal personality or not;
- (j) - “otherwise” and words following “other” shall not be limited by any foregoing words where a wider construction is possible;
- (k) - the words “including” and “in particular” shall be construed as being by way of illustration or emphasis and shall not limit or prejudice the generality of any foregoing words;
- (l) - words and expressions defined in the Railways Act 1993, the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 and Network Rail’s network licence shall, unless otherwise defined in this contract, have the same meanings in this contract;
- (m) - any reference to the term “possession”, either by itself or as part of any composite definition, shall be construed as a reference to a Restriction of Use as defined in Schedule 4;
- (n) - words and expressions defined in the Network Code shall have the same meanings in this contract;
- (o) - if there is any conflict of interpretation between this contract and the Network Code, the Network Code shall prevail;<sup>106th</sup>

- (p) - references to the "Regulator", shall be construed as references to the Office of Rail and Road<sup>114th</sup>;
- (q) - words and expressions defined in the Traction Electricity Rules shall have the same meanings in this contract: and<sup>106th</sup>
- (r) - if there is any conflict of interpretation between this contract (not including the Traction Electricity Rules) and the Traction Electricity Rules, the following order of precedence shall apply: (1) the Traction Electricity Rules; and (2) this contract (not including the Traction Electricity Rules)<sup>106th</sup>.

### **1.3 Indemnities**

Indemnities provided for in this contract are continuing indemnities in respect of the Relevant Losses to which they apply, and hold the indemnified party harmless on an after tax basis.

## **2 NETWORK CODE AND TRACTION ELECTRICITY RULES<sup>106TH</sup>**

### **2.1 Incorporation**

The Network Code and the Traction Electricity Rules are incorporated in and forms part of this contract.

### **2.2 Modifications to the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules**

If either the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules or both are modified at any time, Schedule 10 shall have effect.

### **2.3 Compliance by other operators**

Except where ORR has directed otherwise in the exercise of its powers under the Act or the Network Code, and except in relation to London Underground Limited and Heathrow Express Operating Company Limited to the extent that such persons are not party to the Network Code, Network Rail shall ensure that all operators of trains having permission to use any track comprised in the Network agree to comply with the Network Code.

## **3 CONDITIONS PRECEDENT AND DURATION**

### **3.1 Effective date**

The provisions of this contract, other than Clause 5, take effect from the later of the signature of this contract and 1<sup>st</sup> April 2004.

### **3.2 Conditions precedent to Clause 5**

Clause 5 shall take effect when the following conditions precedent have been satisfied in full:

- (a) - the Train Operator is authorised by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act to be the operator of trains for the provision of the Services or is exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;

- (b) - Network Rail is authorised by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act to be the operator of that part of the Network comprising the Routes or is exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;
- (c) - each of the Collateral Agreements is executed and delivered by all the parties to each such agreement and is unconditional in all respects (save only for the fulfilment of any condition relating to this contract becoming unconditional);
- (d) - each of the parties has, as necessary, a valid safety certificate or safety authorisation as required by the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 and has established and is maintaining a safety management system which meets the requirements of those Regulations; and
- (e) - the provisions of this contract, other than Clause 5, have taken effect in accordance with Clause 3.1.

### **3.3 Obligations to satisfy conditions precedent to Clause 5**

Each party shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure that the following conditions precedent are satisfied as soon as practicable, and in any event not later than the Longstop Date:

- (a) - in the case of Network Rail, the conditions precedent contained in Clause 3.2(b) and, insofar as within its control, Clauses 3.2(c) and 3.2(d); and
- (b) - in the case of the Train Operator, the conditions precedent contained in Clause 3.2(a) and, insofar as within its control, Clauses 3.2(c) and 3.2(d).

### **3.4 Consequences of non-fulfilment of conditions precedent to Clause 5**

If the conditions precedent set out in Clause 3.2 have not been satisfied in full on or before the Longstop Date:

- (a) - this contract shall lapse save for the obligations of confidence contained in Clause 14 which shall continue in force; and
- (b) - neither party shall have any liability to the other except in respect of any breach of its obligations under this contract.

### **3.5 Expiry**

This contract shall continue in force until the earliest of:

- (a) - lapse under Clause 3.4;
- (b) - termination under Schedule 6; and
- (c) - 0159 hours on the Expiry Date.

### **3.6 Suspension and termination**

Schedule 6 shall have effect.

### **3.7 <sup>122nd</sup> Evergreen 3 conditions precedent**

- (a) - The Train Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to satisfy the EG3 Phase 1 Conditions Precedent, the Water Eaton Conditions Precedent and the Oxford Conditions Precedent as soon as reasonably practicable;

- (b) - the EG3 Phase 1 Amendments shall not have effect unless and until the EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date is achieved;
- (c) - the EG3 Phase 2 Amendments which relate to the Water Eaton Works shall not have effect unless and until the date on which Water Eaton Conditions Precedent are satisfied; and
- (d) - the EG3 Phase 2 Amendments which relate to the Oxford Phase 0 Works shall not have effect unless and until the date on which the Oxford Conditions Precedent are satisfied.

### **3.8 "Evergreen 3 conditions subsequent"<sup>73rd</sup>**

- "(a) - If the Train Operator fails to achieve the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent by the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, and no dispute resolution procedures have been commenced under the provisions of either paragraph 15.1 or 15.2 of Schedule 5 (The Services and the Specified Equipment), the provisions of Clause 3.9 will apply.
- (b) - If the Train Operator fails to achieve the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent by the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, and no dispute resolution procedures have been commenced under the provisions of either paragraph 16.1 or 16.2 of Schedule 5 (The Services and the Specified Equipment), the provisions of Clause 3.10 will apply.";

### **3.9 "If the circumstances referred to in Clause 3.8(a) occur:"<sup>73rd</sup>**

- (a) - <sup>85th</sup> the Train Operator's Firm Rights granted pursuant to the 78th Supplemental Track Access Agreement shall continue in full force and effect; and
- (b) - the provisions set out in this Clause 3.9(b) shall apply:
  - (i) - the parties shall, within twenty (20) Working Days of the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the scope of any revised EG3 Rights Phase 1. Each party shall ensure that:
    - (A) - such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice;
    - (B) - the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
    - (C) - the negotiations shall not continue beyond forty (40) Working Days after the end of the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date;
  - (ii) - if the parties fail to agree on any revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 on or before the forty (40) Working Day period referred to in Clause 3.9(b)(i):
    - (A) - the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
    - (B) - Network Rail shall, within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR of such submission to arbitration;

- (iii) if a matter is referred to arbitration under Clause 3.9(b)(ii), the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:
  - (A) - determine the revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 having regard to the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria; and
  - (B) - provide reasons for his award;
- (iv) - not later than forty five (45) Working Days from the end of the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, or five (5) Working Days from the date of the arbitral award, as the case may be, the result of the process set out in Clause 3.9(b)(i) or the arbitration shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:
  - (A) - stating the reasons for the outcome in the case of agreement pursuant to Clause 3.9(b)(i) or the arbitrator's reasons for his award in the case of a determination pursuant to Clause 3.9(b)(iii); and
  - (B) - giving such other information as the ORR may have requested;
- (v) - if, having regard to the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria, the ORR is satisfied with the revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 submitted to it pursuant to Clause 3.9(b)(iv) and it gives a notice to that effect, then the revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 shall have effect;
- (vi) - if the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed revised EG3 Rights Phase 1, it may:
  - (A) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in Clauses 3.9(b)(i) – (iii) for agreeing the revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
  - (B) - following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 itself, having regard to the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria, and give a notice specifying such revised EG3 Rights Phase 1 shall have effect.";

### **3.10 "If the circumstances referred to in Clause 3.8(b) occur:"<sup>73rd</sup>**

- "(a) - the parties shall, within twenty (20) Working Days of the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the scope of any revised EG3 Rights Phase 2. Each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) - such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice;
  - (ii) - the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
  - (iii) - the negotiations shall not continue beyond forty (40) Working Days after the end of the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date;
- (b) - if the parties fail to agree on any revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 on or before the forty (40) Working Day period referred to in Clause 3.10(a):

- (i) the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C - of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
  - (ii) - Network Rail shall, within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR of such submission to arbitration;
- (c) - if a matter is referred to arbitration under Clause 3.10(b), the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:
  - (i) - determine the revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 having regard to the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria; and
  - (ii) - provide reasons for his award;
- (d) - not later than forty five (45) Working Days from the end of the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date, or five (5) Working Days from the date of the arbitral award, as the case may be, the result of the process set out in Clause 3.10(a) or the arbitration shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:
  - (i) - stating the reasons for the outcome in the case of agreement pursuant to Clause 3.10(a) or the arbitrator's reasons for his award in the case of a determination pursuant to Clause 3.10(c); and
  - (ii) - giving such other information as the ORR may have requested;
- (e) - if, having regard to the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria, the ORR is satisfied with the revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 submitted to it pursuant to Clause 3.10(d) and it gives a notice to that effect, then the revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 shall have effect;
- (f) - if the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed revised EG3 Rights Phase 2, it may:
  - (i) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in Clauses 3.10(a) – (c) for agreeing the revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
  - (ii) - following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 itself, having regard to the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria, and give a notice specifying such revised EG3 Rights Phase 2 shall have effect.";

## **4 STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE**

### **4.1 General standard**

Without prejudice to all other obligations of the parties under this contract, each party shall, in its dealings with the other for the purpose of, and in the course of performance of its obligations under, this contract, act with due efficiency and economy and in a timely manner with that degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which should be exercised by a skilled and experienced:

- (a) network owner and operator (in the case of Network Rail); and
- (b) train operator (in the case of the Train Operator).

## 4.2 Good faith

The parties to this contract shall, in exercising their respective rights and complying with their respective obligations under this contract (including when conducting any discussions or negotiations arising out of the application of any provisions of this contract or exercising any discretion under them), at all times act in good faith.

## 5 PERMISSION TO USE

### 5.1 Permission to use the Routes

Network Rail grants the Train Operator permission to use the Routes.

### 5.2 Meaning

References in this contract to permission to use the Routes shall, except where the context otherwise requires, be construed to mean permission:

- (a) - to use the track comprised in the Routes for the provision of the Services using the Specified Equipment;
- (b) - to use the track comprised in the Network in order to implement any plan established under Part H of the Network Code;
- (c) - to make Ancillary Movements;
- (d) - to Stable, which shall be treated, for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code, as the use of a Train Slot;
- (e) - for the Train Operator and its associates to enter upon that part of the Network comprising the Routes, with or without vehicles; and
- (f) - for the Train Operator and its associates to bring things onto that part of the Network comprising the Routes and keep them there,

and such permission is subject, in each case and in all respects to:

- (i) - the Network Code;
- (ii) - the Applicable Engineering Access Statement<sup>MOD A</sup>; and
- (iii) - the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup>.

### 5.3 Permission under Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f)

In relation to the permissions specified in Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f):

- (a) - the Train Operator shall, and shall procure that its associates shall, wherever reasonably practicable, first obtain the consent of Network Rail, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed;
- (b) - the Train Operator shall remove any vehicle or other thing so brought onto any part of the Network when reasonably directed to do so by Network Rail; and
- (c) - whilst exercising any rights conferred by Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f), the Train Operator shall, and shall procure that its associates shall, comply with such reasonable restrictions or instructions as Network Rail shall specify.

#### **5.4 Changes to Applicable Engineering Access Statement and Applicable Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup>**

Changes to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup> are subject to regulatory protection (including appeals) in accordance with Part D of the Network Code.

#### **5.5 Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup> and Restrictions of Use**

Schedule 4 shall have effect.

#### **5.6 The Services and the Specified Equipment**

Schedule 5 shall have effect.

#### **5.7 Performance**

Schedule 8 shall have effect.

#### **5.8 Stabling**

Without prejudice to Network Rail's obligations, if any, under Schedule 5 to provide Stabling, Network Rail shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide such Stabling facilities as are necessary or expedient for or in connection with the provision of the Services in accordance with the Working Timetable.

### **6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF TRAINS AND NETWORK**

#### **6.1 General**

Without prejudice to the other provisions of this contract:

- (a) - the Train Operator shall maintain and operate the Specified Equipment used on the Network in accordance with Clause 4.1 with a view to permitting the provision of the Services on the Routes in accordance with the Working Timetable and the making of Ancillary Movements; and
- (b) - Network Rail shall maintain and operate the Network in accordance with Clause 4.1 with a view to permitting the provision of the Services on the Routes using the Specified Equipment in accordance with the Working Timetable and the making of Ancillary Movements.

#### **6.2 Trespass, vandalism and animals**

Without prejudice to the other provisions of this contract, each of the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours (including participating in such consultation and joint action as is reasonable in all the circumstances) to reduce:

- (a) - trespass;
- (b) - vandalism; and
- (c) - intrusions on to the Network by animals,

in each case as may affect either the provision of the Services or the Routes.



### **6.3 Safety**

In relation to Safety Obligations:

- (a) - the Train Operator shall comply with any reasonable request by Network Rail in relation to any aspect of the Train Operator's operations which affects or is likely to affect the performance of Network Rail's Safety Obligations; and
- (b) - Network Rail shall comply with any reasonable request by the Train Operator in relation to any aspect of Network Rail's operations which affects or is likely to affect the performance of the Train Operator's Safety Obligations,

provided that the implementation by the MS Construction Contractor of the MS Works shall not be treated as part of the Train Operator's operations for this purpose.

### **6.4 Use of Railway Code Systems**

#### *6.4.1 General*

The parties shall:

- (a) - use the Railway Code Systems in their dealings with each other in connection with matters provided for in this contract; and
- (b) - comply with the Systems Code.

#### *6.4.2 Provision of Train Consist Data*

Without prejudice to Clause 6.4.1, the Train Operator shall:

- (a) - provide to Network Rail such Train Consist Data as shall be necessary to enable Network Rail to calculate the amount of Track Charges; and
- (b) - procure that such data is true and accurate in all respects.

## **7 TRACK CHARGES AND OTHER PAYMENTS<sup>106TH</sup>**

Schedule 7 shall have effect.

## **8 LIABILITY**

### **8.1 Performance Orders in relation to breach**

In relation to any breach of this contract:

- (a) - the Innocent Party shall be entitled to apply under Clause 13 for a Performance Order against the party in breach; and
- (b) - if a Performance Order is made, the party against whom it has been made shall comply with it.

### **8.2 Compensation in relation to breach**

In relation to any breach of this contract, the party in breach shall indemnify the Innocent Party against all Relevant Losses.

## **9 NOT USED**

## **10 LIABILITY - OTHER MATTERS**

### **10.1 Train Operator indemnity**

The Train Operator shall indemnify Network Rail against all Relevant Losses resulting from:

- (a) a failure by the Train Operator to comply with its Safety Obligations;
- (b) any Environmental Damage arising directly from the acts or omissions of the Train Operator or the proper taking by Network Rail under Condition E2 of the Network Code of any steps to prevent, mitigate or remedy an Environmental Condition which exists as a direct result of the acts or omissions of the Train Operator; and
- (c) any damage to the Network arising directly from the Train Operator's negligence,

provided that the implementation by the MS Construction Contractor of the MS Works shall not be treated as acts or omissions of the Train Operator for the purposes of this Clause 10.1.

### **10.2 Network Rail indemnity**

Network Rail shall indemnify the Train Operator against all Relevant Losses resulting from:

- (a) a failure by Network Rail to comply with its Safety Obligations;
- (b) any Environmental Damage to the Network arising directly from any acts or omissions of the British Railways Board prior to 1 April 1994 and any Environmental Damage arising directly from the acts or omissions of Network Rail; and
- (c) any damage to the Specified Equipment or other vehicles or things brought onto the Network in accordance with the permission to use granted by this contract arising directly from Network Rail's negligence.

## **11 RESTRICTIONS ON CLAIMS**

### **11.1 Notification and mitigation**

A party wishing to claim under any indemnity provided for in this contract:

- (a) shall notify the other party of the relevant circumstances giving rise to that claim as soon as reasonably practicable after first becoming aware of those circumstances (and in any event within 365 days of first becoming so aware); and
- (b) subject to Clause 11.1(c), shall take all reasonable steps to prevent, mitigate and restrict the circumstances giving rise to that claim and any Relevant Losses connected with that claim; but

- (c) - shall not be required to exercise any specific remedy available to it under this contract.

## **11.2 Restrictions on claims by Network Rail**

Any claim by Network Rail against the Train Operator for indemnity for Relevant Losses:

- (a) - shall exclude payments to any person under or in accordance with the provisions of any Access Agreement other than any such payments which are for obligations to compensate for damage to property, and so that any claim for indemnity under this contract for such payments for damage to property, in relation to any incident, shall be limited to:
  - (i) - the maximum amount for which the Train Operator would be liable for such damage in accordance with the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement; less
  - (ii) - any other compensation which the Train Operator has an obligation to pay for such damage;
- (b) - shall exclude loss of revenue in respect of permission to use any part of the Network under or in accordance with any Access Agreement with any person; and
- (c) - shall:
  - (i) - include Relevant Losses only to the extent that these constitute amounts which Network Rail would not have incurred as network owner and operator but for the relevant breach; and
  - (ii) - give credit for any savings to Network Rail which result or are likely to result from the incurring of such amounts.

## **11.3 Restrictions on claims by Train Operator**

Any claim by the Train Operator against Network Rail for indemnity for Relevant Losses:

- (a) - shall exclude any Relevant Losses to the extent that they result from delays to or cancellations of trains (other than delays or cancellations in circumstances where the SPP Threshold has been exceeded as provided for in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8); and
- (b) - shall:
  - (i) - include Relevant Losses only to the extent that these constitute amounts which the Train Operator would not have incurred as train operator but for the relevant breach; and
  - (ii) - give credit for any savings to the Train Operator which result or are likely to result from the incurring of such amounts.

## **11.4 Restriction on claims by both parties**

Any claim for indemnity for Relevant Losses shall exclude Relevant Losses which:

- (a) - do not arise naturally from the breach; and

- (b) - were not, or may not reasonably be supposed to have been, within the contemplation of the parties:
  - (i) - at the time of the making of this contract; or
  - (ii) - where the breach relates to a modification or amendment to this contract, at the time of the making of such modification or amendment, as the probable result of the breach.

## **11.5 Limitation on liability**

Schedule 9 shall have effect so as to limit the liability of the parties to one another under the indemnities in Clauses 8.2 and 10, but:

- (a) - <sup>106th</sup>does not limit any liability arising under Schedules 4, 5, 7 or 8 (other than under paragraph 18 of Schedule 8) or under the Traction Electricity Rules;
- (b) - in relation to a failure to perform an obligation under the Network Code, only to the extent (including as to time and conditions) that the Network Code so provides; and
- (c) - subject to Clause 18.3.3.

## **11.6 Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement**

### *11.6.1 General*

Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement provide that claims between parties to it are limited to specified amounts unless the parties expressly contract otherwise.

### *11.6.2 Restriction of application*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in this contract, Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement shall not apply as between the parties to this contract if and to the extent that the giving of any right or remedy as provided for under this contract would be prevented or restricted by Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement.

### *11.6.3 Liability for small claims*

Nothing in this contract shall affect the application as between the parties of the provisions of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement which relate to liability for small claims equal to or below the Threshold (as defined in that agreement).

## **12 GOVERNING LAW**

This contract and any non-contractual obligations connected with it shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of England and Wales.<sup>114th</sup>

## 13 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

### 13.1 ADRR<sup>MOD B</sup>

A Relevant Dispute shall be referred for resolution in accordance<sup>MOD B</sup> with the Access Dispute Resolution Rules in force at the time of the reference (the “ADRR”), as modified by this Clause 13, unless:

- (a) - <sup>106th</sup>any Part of the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules provides for an alternative dispute resolution procedure for the Relevant Dispute, in which case such alternative procedure shall apply;
- (b) - any Part of Schedules 4, 5, 7 or 8 provides for an alternative dispute resolution procedure for the Relevant Dispute, in which case such alternative procedure shall apply; or<sup>MOD B</sup>
- (c) - Clause 13.2 applies<sup>MOD B</sup>

### 13.2 <sup>106th</sup> Unpaid sums

If either party fails to pay:

- (a) - any invoice issued to it under this contract in respect of Track Charges; or
- (b) - any other sum which has fallen due in accordance with any provision of this contract, then:
  - (i) - the amount invoiced or sum due, as referred to in Clause 13.2(a) or (b), shall immediately constitute a debt due and owing from the party who has failed to pay the invoice or sum due to the other party (and to any assignee of a party's right to payment in respect of any invoice or other sum due);
  - (ii) - such debt shall be recoverable by any means available under the laws of England and Wales; and
  - (iii) - the dispute resolution procedures in Clauses 13.1 and 13.3 to 13.5 shall not apply to proceedings commenced under this Clause 13.2.

### 13.3 Performance Orders<sup>MOD B</sup>

#### 13.3.1 *Power to order provisional relief*

For the purposes of section 39 of the Arbitration Act 1996, should any Relevant Dispute be allocated in accordance with the ADRR to arbitration under Chapter F of the ADRR, the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> shall have power to order on a provisional basis any relief which he<sup>MOD B</sup> would have power to grant in a final award including Performance Orders.

#### 13.3.2 *Performance Orders*

A Performance Order:

- (a) - is an order made under Clause 13.3.3(b)<sup>MOD B</sup>, relating to a Relevant Dispute, whether by way of interim or final relief; and
- (b) - may be applied for by Network Rail or the Train Operator in the circumstances set out in Clause 8.1, subject to the qualifications in Clause 17.8,

and an application for a Performance Order shall be without prejudice to any other remedy available to the claimant under this contract (whether final or interim and whether by way of appeal under the Network Code or otherwise).

### *13.3.3 Duties of arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> in relation to Performance Orders*

Without prejudice to any additional remedies that may be ordered by the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> under Clause 13.4<sup>MOD B</sup>, where a dispute is allocated in accordance with the ADRR to arbitration<sup>MOD B</sup> and a party has applied for a Performance Order, the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that:<sup>MOD B</sup>

- (a) - the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> shall decide as soon as possible whether the application is well founded or not; and
- (b) - if the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> decides that the application is well founded, it shall be required to make an interim or final declaration to that effect and, in that event, the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> may also make any interim or final order directing any party to do or to refrain from doing anything arising from such declaration which he<sup>MOD B</sup> considers just and reasonable in all the circumstances.

## **13.4 Remedies**

The powers exercisable by the arbitrator<sup>MOD B</sup> as regards remedies shall include:

- (a) - the powers specified in sections 48(3) to (5) of the Arbitration Act 1996;
- (b) - the powers specified in the ADRR;
- (c) - the power to make Performance Orders; and
- (d) - the power to order within the same reference to arbitration any relief specified in Clause 13.4<sup>MOD B</sup> (a), (b) and (c) consequent upon, or for the breach of, any interim or final Performance Order previously made.

## **13.5 Exclusion of applications on preliminary points of law**

Any recourse to any Court for the determination of a preliminary point of law arising in the course of the arbitration proceedings is excluded.

# **14 CONFIDENTIALITY**

## **14.1 Confidential Information**

### *14.1.1 General obligation*

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, all Confidential Information shall be held confidential during and after the continuance of this contract and shall not be divulged in any way to any third party without the prior written approval of the other party.

### *14.1.2 Network Rail - Affiliates*

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, Network Rail shall procure that its Affiliates and its and their respective officers, employees and agents shall keep confidential and not disclose to any person any Confidential Information.

### 14.1.3 Train Operator - Affiliates

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, the Train Operator shall procure that its Affiliates and its and their respective officers, employees and agents shall keep confidential and not disclose to any person any Confidential Information.

## 14.2 Entitlement to divulge

Either party, and its Affiliates, and its and their respective officers, employees and agents, shall be entitled in good faith to divulge any Confidential Information without the approval of the other party in the following circumstances:

- (a) - to ORR;
- (b) - to the Secretary of State;
- (c) - to any Affiliate of either party;
- (d) - to any officer or employee of the party in question or any person engaged in the provision of goods or services to or for him if disclosure is necessary or reasonably required to enable the party in question to perform its obligations under this contract, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from such officer, employee or person;
- (e) - to any professional advisers or consultants of such party engaged by or on behalf of such party and acting in that capacity, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from such advisers or consultants;
- (f) - to any insurer or insurance broker from whom such party is seeking insurance or in connection with the making of any claim under any policy of insurance upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from the insurer or insurance broker;
- (g) - to any lender, security trustee, bank or other institution from whom such party is seeking or obtaining finance or credit support for such finance, or any advisers to any such entity, or any rating agency from whom such party is seeking a rating in connection with such finance or credit support, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from the entity, advisers or rating agency in question;
- (h) - to the extent required by the Act, any licence under section 8 of the Act held by the party in question, any other applicable law, the rules of any recognised stock exchange or regulatory body or any written request of any taxation authority;
- (i) - to the extent that it has become available to the public other than as a result of a breach of confidence; and
- (j) - under the order of any court or tribunal of competent jurisdiction (including the Allocation Chair or any relevant ADRR Forum, each as defined in the ADRR<sup>MOD B</sup>).

## 14.3 Return of Confidential Information

Each of Network Rail and the Train Operator shall promptly return to the other party any Confidential Information requested by the other party if such request:

- (a) - is made on or within two months after the Expiry Date or, if this contract lapses or is terminated earlier, is made within two months after the date on which this contract lapses or is terminated;

- (b) - is reasonable; and
- (c) - contains a sufficient description of the relevant Confidential Information to enable such information to be readily identified and located.

#### **14.4 Retention or destruction of Confidential Information**

If Network Rail or the Train Operator, as the case may be, has not received a request to return any Confidential Information to the other party under and within the time limits specified in Clause 14.3, it may destroy or retain such Confidential Information.

#### **14.5 Ownership of Confidential Information**

All Confidential Information shall be and shall remain the property of the party which supplied it to the other party.

#### **14.6 <sup>106th</sup> Network Code, Traction Electricity Rules and Schedule 7**

Nothing in this Clause 14 restricts the right of Network Rail to disclose information to which this Clause 14 applies to the extent that it is permitted or required to do so under the Network Code, the Traction Electricity Rules or Schedule 7.

### **15 ASSIGNMENT AND NOVATION**

#### **15.1 Assignment**

Neither party may assign, transfer, novate (including a novation under Clause 15.2) or create any encumbrance or other security interest over the whole or any part of its rights and obligations under this contract except to the extent approved by ORR following consultation with the other party, and subject to the conditions (if any) of ORR's approval.

#### **15.2 Novation**

Network Rail (and any assignee of all or part of Network Rail's rights under this contract) shall:

- (a) - agree to the novation of the rights and obligations of the Train Operator under this contract in favour of another person (including the Secretary of State or a person nominated by him) in any circumstances where the Secretary of State requests Network Rail to participate in such a novation in the course of exercising its powers under section 30 of the Act; and
- (b) - execute such contracts and do such things as the Secretary of State may reasonably request to give effect to the novation.

#### **15.3 Novation terms**

Any novation under Clause 15.2 shall be on terms that:

- (a) - the Train Operator shall not be released from:
  - (i) - any accrued but unperformed obligation;
  - (ii) - the consequences of any breach of this contract which is the subject of any proceedings (arbitral or otherwise) for the resolution of a dispute between the parties; or



- (iii) - any liability in respect of anything done under this contract before, or as at the date of, any such novation (except to the extent that such other person agrees to assume and be responsible for it); and
- (b) - such other person shall not be required by Network Rail, as a term of or a condition to the novation, to agree to assume and be responsible for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequence of a breach of the kind referred to in Clause 15.3(a), but this shall not prevent any such agreement being a term or condition of the novation if required by the Secretary of State.

## **16 PAYMENTS, INTEREST AND VAT**

### **16.1 Payment**

#### *16.1.1 No deduction*

All sums due or payable by either party under this contract shall be paid free and clear of any deduction, withholding or set off except only as may be required by law or as expressly provided in any Schedule to this contract<sup>106th</sup> in the Network Code, or under the Traction Electricity Rules.

#### *16.1.2 Delivery of invoices<sup>129th</sup>*

All invoices issued under Schedule 7, or statements of amounts payable under Schedule 4, Schedule 5 or Schedule 8, or under the Network Code, or under the Traction Electricity Rules, shall be delivered by hand at, or sent by prepaid first class post, or by facsimile transmission (with confirmation copy by prepaid first class post), or by email (where both parties agree) to the address for service for the recipient specified in Schedule 1 and shall be deemed to have been received by the addressee in accordance with clause 18.4.3.

#### *16.1.3 Content of invoices and other statements of amounts payable*

Each invoice and statement of amounts payable shall contain such detail as to the constituent elements of the amounts stated to be payable as shall be necessary or expedient so as to enable the person to whom it is given to understand and check it.

#### *16.1.4 Method of payment*

All payments shall be made by direct debit mandate or standing order mandate, CHAPS transfer, BACS transfer or other electronic or telegraphic transfer to a London clearing bank or such other financial institution as may be approved by the party entitled to the payment, such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

### **16.2 Interest**

Without prejudice to any other rights or remedies which one party may have in respect of the failure of the other party to pay any amount on the due date, amounts payable under this contract and not paid by the due date shall carry interest (to accrue daily and to be compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the due date until the date of actual payment (as well after judgment as before), except to the extent that

late payment arises from any failure by the invoicing party to comply with Clause 16.1.2 or Clause 16.1.3.

## 16.3 VAT

### *16.3.1 Payment of VAT*

Where any taxable supply for VAT purposes is made under or in connection with this contract by one party to the other the payer shall, in addition to any payment required for that supply, pay such VAT as is chargeable in respect of it.

### *16.3.2 Reimbursement of VAT*

Where under this contract one party is to reimburse or indemnify the other in respect of any payment made or cost incurred by the other, the first party shall also reimburse any VAT paid by the other which forms part of its payment made or cost incurred to the extent such VAT is not available for credit for the other party (or for any person with whom the indemnified party is treated as a member of a group for VAT purposes) under sections 25 and 26 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994.

### *16.3.3 VAT credit note to be issued on repayment*

Where under this contract any rebate or repayment of any amount is payable by one party to the other, and the first party is entitled as a matter of law or of HM Revenue and Customs practice to issue a valid VAT credit note, such rebate or repayment shall be paid together with an amount representing the VAT paid on that part of the consideration in respect of which the rebate or repayment is made, and the first party shall issue an appropriate VAT credit note to the other party.

## 17 FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS

### 17.1 Meaning of Force Majeure Event

In this Clause 17:

**“Affected Party”** means, in relation to a Force Majeure Event, the party claiming relief under this Clause 17 by virtue of that Force Majeure Event, and “Non-affected Party” shall be construed accordingly;

**“Force Majeure Event”** means any of the following events (and any circumstance arising as a direct consequence of any of the following events):

- (a) - an act of the public enemy or terrorists or war (declared or undeclared), threat of war, revolution, riot, insurrection, civil commotion, demonstration or sabotage;
- (b) - acts of vandalism or accidental damage or destruction of machinery, equipment, track or other infrastructure;
- (c) - natural disasters or phenomena, including extreme weather or environmental conditions (such as lightning, earthquake, hurricane, storm, fire, flood, drought or accumulation of snow or ice);
- (d) - nuclear, chemical or biological contamination;
- (e) - pressure waves caused by devices travelling at supersonic speeds;

- (f) - discovery of fossils, antiquities or unexploded bombs; and
- (g) - strike or other industrial action which is a single circumstance and which also is a strike or industrial action in sectors of the economy other than the railway industry;

**“Force Majeure Notice”** means a notice to be given by the Affected Party to the other party stating that a Force Majeure Event has occurred;

**“Force Majeure Report”** means a report to be given by the Affected Party to the other party following the giving of a Force Majeure Notice;

**“Relevant Force Majeure Event”** means a Force Majeure Event in relation to which an Affected Party is claiming relief under this Clause 17; and

**“Relevant Obligation”** means an obligation under this contract in respect of which a Force Majeure Event has occurred and the Affected Party has claimed relief under this Clause 17.

## 17.2 Nature and extent of relief for Force Majeure

Force Majeure relief under this Clause 17:

- (a) - extinguishes the obligation of the Affected Party to indemnify the other party under Clause 8.2 in respect of Relevant Losses sustained as a result of the failure of the Affected Party to perform a Relevant Obligation; but
- (b) - is not available in respect of:
  - (i) - <sup>106th</sup> any obligation to pay money under Schedules 4, 5, 7 and 8 or the Traction Electricity Rules; or
  - (ii) - any other obligation to do or refrain from doing any other thing provided for in this contract; and
- (c) - is only available in relation to a failure to perform an obligation under the Network Code to the extent (including as to time and conditions) that the Network Code so provides.

## 17.3 Entitlement to Force Majeure relief

An Affected Party is entitled to Force Majeure relief if and to the extent that:

- (a) - performance of the Relevant Obligation has been prevented or materially impeded by reason of a Force Majeure Event;
- (b) - it has taken all reasonable steps, taking account of all relevant circumstances (including as to whether the event in question could reasonably have been anticipated):
  - (i) - to avoid the occurrence of the Force Majeure Event; and
  - (ii) - to minimise, and where practicable avoid, the effects of the Force Majeure Event on its ability to perform the Relevant Obligation; and
- (c) - except in the case of Clause 17.1(f), none of the Affected Party, its officers, employees or agents caused the Force Majeure Event.

## **17.4 Procedure for claiming relief**

Without prejudice to Clause 17.3, an Affected Party is only entitled to claim Force Majeure relief under this Clause 17 if it complies with the obligations to give Force Majeure Notices, Force Majeure Reports and provide other information under Clause 17.5 and to perform its obligations under Clause 17.6.

## **17.5 Force Majeure Notices and Reports**

### *17.5.1 Force Majeure Notice*

In relation to any Relevant Force Majeure Event:

- (a) - as soon as reasonably practicable after the Affected Party becomes aware, or ought reasonably to have become aware, that such Force Majeure Event qualifies for relief under this Clause 17 (and, in any event, within 72 hours of becoming aware of such circumstances), the Affected Party shall give a Force Majeure Notice; and
- (b) - the Force Majeure Notice shall include detailed particulars (to the extent available) of the Relevant Force Majeure Event and its consequences, its effects on the Affected Party, the Relevant Obligations, the likely duration of such consequences and effects and the remedial measures proposed by the Affected Party to avoid or remove the Relevant Force Majeure Event or to mitigate its consequences and effects.

### *17.5.2 Force Majeure Report*

Following the giving of a Force Majeure Notice:

- (a) - the Affected Party shall give a Force Majeure Report as soon as practicable, and in any event within seven days of service of the Force Majeure Notice; and
- (b) - the Force Majeure Report shall constitute a full report on the Relevant Force Majeure Event, amplifying the information provided in the Force Majeure Notice and containing such information as may reasonably be required by the Non-affected Party, including the effect which the Relevant Force Majeure Event is estimated to have on the Affected Party's performance of the Relevant Obligations.

### *17.5.3 Other information*

The Affected Party shall promptly give the Non-affected Party all other information concerning the Relevant Force Majeure Event and the steps which could reasonably be taken, and which the Affected Party proposes to take, to avoid or remove the Relevant Force Majeure Event or to mitigate its consequences and effects as may reasonably be requested by the Non-affected Party from time to time.

## **17.6 Mitigation**

The Affected Party shall, promptly upon becoming aware of the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event in respect of which it intends to claim relief, use all reasonable endeavours to:

- (a) minimise the effects of such Force Majeure Event on the performance of the Relevant Obligations; and
  - (b) minimise the duration of such Force Majeure Event,
- and shall keep the Non-affected Party fully informed of the actions which it has taken or proposes to take under this Clause 17.6.

### **17.7 Duration of relief for force majeure**

The right of an Affected Party to relief under Clause 17.2 shall cease on the earlier of:

- (a) - the date on which its performance of the Relevant Obligations is no longer prevented or materially impeded by the Relevant Force Majeure Event; and
- (b) - the date on which such performance would no longer have been prevented or materially impeded if the Affected Party had complied with its obligations under Clause 17.6.

### **17.8 Availability of Performance Order**

If and to the extent that a breach of this contract has been caused by a Relevant Force Majeure Event, the Non-affected Party shall not be entitled to a Performance Order except to secure performance by the Affected Party of its obligations under this Clause 17.

## **18 MISCELLANEOUS**

### **18.1 Non waiver**

#### *18.1.1 No waiver*

No waiver by either party of any failure by the other to perform any obligation under this contract shall operate or be construed as a waiver of any other or further default, whether of a like or different character.

#### *18.1.2 Failure or delay in exercising a right or remedy*

The failure to exercise or delay in exercising a right or remedy under this contract shall not constitute a waiver of the right or remedy or a waiver of any other rights or remedies, and no single or partial exercise of any right or remedy under this contract shall prevent any further exercise of the right or remedy or the exercise of any other right or remedy.

### **18.2 Variations**

#### *18.2.1 Amendments to be in writing and to be approved*

No amendment of any provision of this contract shall be effective unless:

- (a) - such amendment is in writing and signed by, or on behalf of, the parties; and
- (b) - if it is an amendment which requires ORR's approval under section 22 of the Act, the amendment has been approved by ORR.

### *18.2.2 Exceptions*

Clause 18.2.1(b) does not apply to amendments of the following kinds:

- (a) an amendment made by virtue of a general approval issued by ORR under section 22 of the Act; and
- (b) a modification made by virtue of Clause 18.4.2.

### *18.2.3 <sup>106th</sup>No Office of Rail Regulation approval needed*

Modifications of the following kinds do not require ORR's approval under section 22 of the Act and so are not subject to Clause 18.2.1(b):

- (a) - modifications effected by virtue of any of the Schedules to this contract; and
- (b) - modifications effected by virtue of the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules,

unless the relevant provision expressly states that it requires the approval of ORR.

### *18.2.4 Conformed copy of contract*

Network Rail shall produce and send to the Train Operator and to ORR a conformed copy of this contract within 28 days of the making of any amendment or modification to it (including any modification made by virtue of Schedule 10).

## **18.3 Entire contract and exclusive remedies**

### *18.3.1 Entire contract*

Subject to Clause 18.3.3:

- (a) - this contract contains the entire agreement between the parties in relation to the subject matter of this contract;
- (b) - each party acknowledges that it has not been induced to enter into this contract in reliance upon, nor has it been given, any warranty, representation, statement, agreement or undertaking of any nature whatsoever other than as expressly set out in this contract and, to the extent that this is not the case, the relevant party unconditionally and irrevocably waives any claims, rights or remedies which it might otherwise have had in relation to any such matter; and
- (c) - neither party shall have any right to rescind or terminate this contract either for breach of contract or for misrepresentation or otherwise, except as expressly provided for in this contract.

### *18.3.2 Exclusive remedies*

Subject to Clause 18.3.3 and except as expressly provided in this contract:

- (a) - neither party shall have any liability (including liability arising as a result of any negligence, breach of contract or breach of statutory obligation) to the other in connection with the subject matter of this contract; and
- (b) - the remedies provided for in this contract shall be the sole remedies available to the parties in respect of any matters for which such remedies are available.

### *18.3.3 Fraud, death and personal injury*

Without prejudice to the generality of this Clause 18.3, nothing in this contract shall exclude, restrict or limit, or purport to exclude, restrict or limit:

- (a) - any liability which either party would otherwise have to the other party, or any right which either party may have to rescind this contract, in respect of any statement made fraudulently by the other party before the execution of this contract;
- (b) - any right which either party may have in respect of fraudulent concealment by the other party;
- (c) - any right which either party may have in respect of a statement of the kind referred to in section 146 of the Act, whether or not proceedings have been instituted in that respect; or
- (d) - any liability which either party may have towards the other party for death or personal injury resulting from its negligence or the negligence of any of its officers, employees or agents.

## **18.4 Notices**

### *18.4.1 Giving of notices*

Any notice to be given under this contract:

- (a) - shall be in writing; and
- (b) - <sup>129th</sup> shall be duly given if signed by or on behalf of a person duly authorised to do so by the party giving the notice and delivered by hand at, or by sending it by prepaid first class post, recorded delivery, or by facsimile transmission (with confirmation copy by prepaid first class post) or by email (where the parties agree) to the relevant address or email address or facsimile number as set out in Schedule 1.

For the purposes of this Clause 18.4 and Clause 16.1.2, delivery by hand shall include delivery by a reputable firm of couriers.

### *18.4.2 Right to modify registered company and communication details*

A party shall be entitled to modify in any respect;

- (a) the registered name and address details which relate to it and are not set out on page one of this contract (provided that this modification shall not amount to or purport to be an assignment, transfer or novation of this contract); and
- (b) the communication particulars which relate to it and which are set out in Schedule 1,  
by giving notice of such modification:
  - (i) to the other party as soon as reasonably practicable; and
  - (ii) to ORR within 14 days of such modification.

### 18.4.3 Deemed receipt

A notice shall be deemed to have been given and received:

- (a) - if sent by hand or recorded delivery, at the time of delivery;
- (b) - if sent by prepaid first class post from and to any place within the United Kingdom, three Working Days after posting unless otherwise proven; and
- (c) - if sent by facsimile (subject to confirmation of uninterrupted transmission by a transmission report) before 1700 hours on a Working Day, on the day of transmission and, in any other case, at 0900 hours on the next following Working Day.

### 18.4.4 Copyees

If Schedule 1 specifies any person to whom copies of notices shall also be sent:

- (a) - the party giving a notice in the manner required by this Clause 18.4 shall send a copy of the notice to such person at the address for sending copies as specified in Schedule 1, or to such other person or address as may, from time to time, have been notified by the party to be notified to the notifying party under this Clause 18.4; and
- (b) - such copy notice shall be sent immediately after the original notice.

## 18.5 Counterparts

This contract may be executed in two counterparts which, taken together, shall constitute one and the same document. Either party may enter into this contract by signing either of such counterparts.

## 18.6 Survival

Those provisions of this contract which by their nature or implication are required to survive expiry or termination of this contract (including the provisions of Clauses 8 (Liability), 10 (Liability - Other Matters), 11 (Restrictions on Claims); 12 (Governing Law), 13.2 (Unpaid Sums), 14 (Confidentiality), 16 (Payments, Interest and VAT), 17 (Force Majeure Events), paragraph 4 of Schedule 6 (Consequence of Termination) and Schedule 9 (Limitation on liability)), shall so survive and continue in full force and effect, together with any other provisions of this contract necessary to give effect to such provisions.

## 18.7 Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999

### 18.7.1 Application to third parties

Save as provided in this Clause 18.7 or as expressly provided elsewhere in this contract, no person who is not a party to this contract shall have any right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any term of this contract.

### 18.7.2 Application to the Office of Rail Regulation

ORR shall have the right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce directly such rights as have been granted to it under this contract.



### 18.7.3 *Application to the Secretary of State*

The Secretary of State shall have the right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 directly to enforce Clauses 15.2 and 15.3.

### 18.7.4<sup>106th</sup> *Application of the Traction Electricity Rules to other train operators*

Any Metered Train Operator, Prospective Metered Train Operator or Modelled Train Operator (as defined in the Traction Electricity Rules) shall have the right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 directly to enforce such rights as have been granted to it under the Traction Electricity Rules.

## 19 TRANSITION

### 19.1 Corresponding Rights

In relation to any Corresponding Right:

- (a) - any Access Proposal or Rolled Over Access Proposal<sup>MOD A</sup> made under the Previous Access Agreement in relation to a Train Slot in respect of which there is a Corresponding Right shall:
  - (i) - cease to have effect under the Previous Access Agreement as from the Transition Date; and
  - (ii) - be deemed to have effect under this contract as from the Transition Date;
- (b) - any Train Slot which is the subject of an Access Proposal or Rolled Over Access Proposal<sup>MOD A</sup> referred to in Clause 19.1(a) shall for all purposes be treated as if it had been established in and under this contract and not the Previous Access Agreement;
- (c) - any consultations undertaken, notices served, matters referred to dispute resolution, agreements reached or determinations made which:
  - (i) - are made in accordance with Parts D, F, G or H of the Network Code under the Previous Access Agreement in relation to the Engineering Access Statement or the Timetable Planning Rules<sup>MOD A</sup>, Major Projects, Vehicle Change, Network Change or train regulation; and
  - (ii) - relate to a right under the Previous Access Agreement which is the subject of a Corresponding Right,
 shall:
  - (A) - cease to have effect under the Previous Access Agreement as from the Transition Date; and
  - (B) - be deemed to have effect under this contract as from the Transition Date; and
- (d) - in applying Schedule 4, effect shall be given:
  - (i) - in relation to any Restriction of Use which was notified before the Transition Date, to any Previous Notification Factor;
  - (ii) - in relation to any Significant Restrictions of Use, to any bespoke compensation arrangements established under the Previous Access Agreement; and

- (iii) in relation to any Competent Authority Restrictions of Use, to any bespoke compensation arrangements established under the Previous Access Agreement.

## 19.2 Definitions

In this Clause 19: -

**“Corresponding Right”** means any right of a party under this contract which: -

- (a) - relates to the permission of the Train Operator to use the Routes; and
- (b) - corresponds to a right which:
  - (i) - existed under the Previous Access Agreement; and
  - (ii) - ceased to have effect under the Previous Access Agreement as from the Transition Date;

**“Previous Access Agreement”** means the track access agreement dated 30<sup>th</sup> April 1995 between Network Rail Infrastructure Limited and The Chiltern Railways Company Limited ;

**“Previous Notification Factor”** means the Notification Factor as established by reference to Column C, D or E of Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 under the relevant Previous Access Agreement; and

**“Transition Date”** means the date on which this contract comes into effect for all purposes.

## 20. Deleted<sup>127th</sup>

## **Schedule 1 Contact particulars**

1. Network Rail's address for service of notices is:

Network Rail Infrastructure Limited  
1 Eversholt Street  
London  
NW1 2DN  
Tel: 020 7904 4001  
Email: [notices@networkrail.co.uk](mailto:notices@networkrail.co.uk)

All written notices to be marked:

“URGENT: ATTENTION THE COMPANY SECRETARY AND SOLICITOR”

and copied to:

The Route Director  
Network Rail London North Western  
Floor 1, Baskerville House  
Centenary Square  
Birmingham  
B1 2ND  
Tel: 0330 854 0128

2. The Train Operator's address for the service of notices is:

The Chiltern Railway Company Limited  
Great Central House  
Marylebone Station  
Melcombe Place  
London  
NW1 6JJ  
Tel: 0207 733 3022  
Fax: 0207 733 3018

All written notices to be marked:

“URGENT: ATTENTION

and copied to: THE MANAGING DIRECTOR

## **SCHEDULE 2: THE ROUTES<sup>114th</sup>**

1. In order to provide the Services, the Train Operator has permission to use the routes specified in Column 1 of Table 2.1 and Table 2.2 of Schedule 5.
2. In order to provide Services when any part of the route is unavailable, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable route for diversionary purposes, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment over the route in question.
3. In order to make Ancillary Movements, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable route, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment over the route in question.
4. In order to Stable railway vehicles, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable location, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment for the location in question.
5. Use of all routes is subject to the Network Code.

### **Schedule 3 Collateral Agreements**

1. Two access agreements between (1) the Train Operator and (2) Network Rail granting the Train Operator permission to use Paddington Station and the other granting the Train Operator permission to use Birmingham New Street.
2. An agreement under which the Train Operator agrees to become a party to the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement and, for the purpose of Schedule 6, the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement.
3. A franchise agreement dated 16 February 2002 between (1) M40 Trains Limited and (2) the SRA and (3) the Train Operator under the Act under which the franchisee undertakes to provide or procure the provision of all or a material part of the Services.
4. An accession agreement to the document entitled Emergency Access Code as approved or directed by the Regulator and, for the purpose of Schedule 6, the Emergency Access Code.

# Schedule 4 Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules and Restrictions of Use<sup>106th</sup>

## PART 1 NOT USED

## PART 2 NOT USED

## PART 3: COMPENSATION FOR RESTRICTIONS OF USE

### 1 Definitions

#### 1.1 *Defined terms*

In this Part 3 and its Annexes, unless the context otherwise requires:

- “Applicable Timetable”** means, in respect of any day, that part of the Working Timetable in respect of that day which is required to be drawn up in accordance with Condition D2.1.1 of the Network Code as at 22:00 hours on the day prior to that day;
- “Bi-annual Timetable”** means either of the following:
- (a) - the Corresponding Day Timetable for all days in the period from and including the Principal Change Date up to but excluding the immediately following Subsidiary Change Date; or
  - (b) - the Corresponding Day Timetable for all days from and including the Subsidiary Change Date up to but excluding the immediately following Subsidiary Change Date or Principal Change Date, as the case may be;
- “Cancellation Minutes”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
- “Cap”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
- “Corresponding Day”** means, in respect of any day (the “first day”):
- (a) - a day which is contained in the same Timetable Period as the first day and on which the Services scheduled in the New Working Timetable are the same as would have been scheduled on the first day but for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or

	<p>(b) - if no day is found under paragraph (a) above, then a day which is contained in the equivalent Timetable Period for the time of year, in the year immediately preceding the Timetable Period which includes the first day and on which the Services scheduled in the New Working Timetable are the same as would have been scheduled on the first day but for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or</p> <p>(c) - if no day is found under paragraph (a) or (b) above, such other day as the parties may agree or as may be determined in accordance with paragraph 12.2;</p>
<b>“Corresponding Day Timetable”</b>	means, in relation to a Corresponding Day, the New Working Timetable or such other timetable as may be agreed between the parties or otherwise determined in accordance with paragraph 12.2;
<b>“CPI”<sup>129th</sup></b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;
<b>“Day 42 Statement”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 13.1(a);
<b>“Defined Service Group Revenue”<sup>129th</sup></b>	shall have the relevant value as set out in Annex D to Part 3 of this Schedule 4;
<b>“Disrupted”</b>	means: <p>(a) - cancelled;</p> <p>(b) - diverted off the Route over which it was scheduled to run in the Corresponding Day Timetable; and/or</p> <p>(c) - starting or finishing short in comparison with the Service as timetabled in the Corresponding Day Timetable;</p>
<b>“First Restriction”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(i);
<b>“First Restriction Period”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii);
<b>“Further Restriction”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii)(B);
<b>“High Speed Diversion”</b>	means a situation in which a Train is diverted between successive Monitoring Points such that it travels a longer distance at a higher average speed than that normally scheduled and arrives at its destination at a time later than that specified in the New Working Timetable;
<b>“Initial Indexation Factor”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;

<b>“Monitoring Point”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>“Network Rail Restriction of Use”</b>	means any Restriction of Use other than an Operator Restriction of Use;
<b>“Notification Factor” or “NF”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 9;
<b>“Off-Peak”</b>	where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;
<b>“Operator Restriction of Use”</b>	means a Restriction of Use of the type referred to in paragraph 2.3;
<b>“Over-run”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a);
<b>“Peak”</b>	where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;
<b>“Performance Monitoring System”<sup>129th</sup></b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>“Period”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>“Public Holiday”</b>	means any day other than Saturday or Sunday on which the banks in the City of London are not open for business;
<b>“Recovery Allowance”</b>	means an allowance for additional time incorporated in the New Working Timetable or (where the Train Operator requests that the allowance is not incorporated in the New Working Timetable and Network Rail complies with that request) the Applicable Timetable to allow a Train to regain time lost during an earlier part of its journey;
<b>“Restriction of Use”<sup>129th</sup></b>	<p>means, in respect of any day, any difference from the normal capability of all or any part of the Routes (where the normal capability of the Routes is expressed in the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules relevant to that day notified to each Timetable participant on or before D-26) which results in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a difference between the Applicable Timetable on that day as compared with the New Working Timetable in respect of that day; and/or</li> <li>(b) a difference between the New Working Timetable on that day as compared with the Corresponding Day Timetable in respect of the Corresponding Day;</li> </ul>
<b>“Restriction of Use Day”</b>	means a day on which a Network Rail Restriction of Use is taken or deemed to be taken;



<b>“RoU Claim Notice”</b>	means a notice issued by either party pursuant to paragraph 2.8;
<b>“RoU Direct Costs”</b>	<p>means the aggregate amount of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) bus and taxi hire costs;</li> <li>(b) publicity costs;</li> <li>(c) train planning and diagramming costs; and</li> <li>(d) other costs directly related to the organisation and management of the Train Operator’s response to a Type 2 Restriction of Use, <p>reasonably incurred by the Train Operator as a result of a Type 2 Restriction of Use, adjusted by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) adding any increase in RoU Variable Costs; and</li> <li>(ii) deducting any decrease in RoU Variable Costs;</li> </ul> </li></ul>
<b>“RoU Liability”</b>	means any costs, direct losses and expenses (including any loss of revenue) reasonably incurred or reasonably expected to be incurred by the Train Operator (including any increase in RoU Variable Costs but net of any benefit arising from the taking of a Restriction of Use including any decrease in RoU Variable Costs) as a consequence of a Type 3 Restriction of Use or any Restriction(s) of Use covered by an SPD Claim;
<b>“RoU Losses”</b>	means any RoU Direct Costs or RoU Liability (as applicable);
<b>“RoU Trigger Date”</b>	<p>means, in respect of any Period, the later to occur of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the date on which Network Rail issues a Day 42 Statement; and</li> <li>(b) in the event of any dispute in respect of Network Rail’s Day 42 Statement, the date on which such dispute is agreed or determined;</li> </ul>
<b>“RoU Variable Costs”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means any Train Operator costs which vary as a result of a Restriction of Use or where applicable an Over-run arising directly from changes in train mileage including maintenance, fuel or the Traction Electricity Charge and the Variable Usage Charge and the VUC Default Charge (as such terms are defined in Schedule 7);
<b>“SPD Claim”</b>	has the meaning specified in paragraph 2.10(d);
<b>“SPD Notice”</b>	means a notice issued by either party pursuant to paragraph

	2.10(a);
<b>“SPD Period”</b>	means the period of any 3 or 7 (as the case may be) consecutive Periods in which it is agreed or determined that Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred in respect of the Train Operator, together with any subsequent consecutive Period up to but excluding the first Period to occur in respect of which it is agreed or determined that the test for Sustained Planned Disruption is not satisfied in respect of the Train Operator;
<b>“SPD Cost Threshold No.1”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means £342,223;
<b>“SPD Cost Threshold No.2”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means £684,447;
<b>“SPD Revenue Threshold No.1”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means 20% of 1/13 <sup>th</sup> of the relevant Defined Service Group Revenue over three consecutive Periods;
<b>“SPD Revenue Threshold No.2”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means 15% of 1/13 <sup>th</sup> of the relevant Defined Service Group Revenue over seven consecutive Periods;
<b>“SPD Termination Notice”</b>	has the meaning specified in paragraph 2.10(c);
<b>“Sustained Planned Disruption” or “SPD”</b>	<p>means a circumstance where:</p> <p>(a) - the aggregate of the compensation payable in respect of a Service Group calculated in accordance with paragraph 3 for any one or more Restrictions of Use during:</p> <p>(i) 3 consecutive Periods is equal to or exceeds SPD Revenue Threshold No.1; or</p> <p>(ii) 7 consecutive Periods is equal to or exceeds SPD Revenue Threshold No.2,</p> <p>and that the difference between the RoU Liability calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the compensation calculated in accordance with paragraph 3 and paragraph 4 for such Restrictions of Use during that period would be more than £10,000; or</p> <p>(b) - in respect of any one or more Restrictions of Use during :</p> <p>(i) 3 consecutive Periods the difference between the Train Operator’s RoU Liability (excluding any loss of revenue) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the Train Operator’s costs calculated under</p>

	paragraph 4 would be more than SPD Cost Threshold No. 1; or
	(ii) 7 consecutive Periods the difference between the Train Operator's RoU Liability (excluding any loss of revenue) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the Train Operator's costs calculated under paragraph 4 would be more than SPD Cost Threshold No. 2;
<b>"Service Code"</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>"Service Group"</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>"Train"</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>"Train–Bus–Train Pattern"</b>	means a situation where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a Restriction of Use occurs on any section of track between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) successive Monitoring Points; or</li> <li>(ii) the station of origin and the next Monitoring Point; and</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) the Train Operator uses a substitute bus or other alternative road service between any pair of stations situated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) between or including such successive Monitoring Points; or</li> <li>(ii) at or between the station of origin and the next Monitoring Point;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>"Type 1 Restriction of Use"</b>	means any single Restriction of Use which does not fall within the definition of Type 2 Restriction of Use or Type 3 Restriction of Use;
<b>"Type 2 Restriction of Use"</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a single Restriction of Use of more than 60 consecutive hours (excluding any part of that Restriction of Use which occurs during a Public Holiday); and</li> <li>(b) which results in a Service being Disrupted but excluding any Restriction of Use which falls within the definition of Type 3 Restriction of Use;</li> </ul>
<b>"Type 3 Liability Claim"</b>	has the meaning specified in paragraph 2.7(b);
<b>"Type 3 Restriction of Use"</b>	means a single Restriction of Use of more than 120 consecutive hours (including any part of that Restriction of

	Use which occurs during a Public Holiday);
<b>“Unplanned Over-run Period”</b>	shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii)(A);
<b>“Viable Transfer Point”</b>	a station normally served by the services operated by the Train Operator, and equipped to enable the efficient and safe transfer of trainloads of passengers to and from alternative modes of transport, and/or services operated by other Train Operators, and which the parties have agreed, and set out in Annex B, shall be used for the purpose of providing bus substitution services, and for calculating the cost of bus substitution services in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 4 "Costs Compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use";
<b>“Week”</b>	means a period commencing at 00:00:00 hours on any Saturday and ending at 23:59:59 hours on the next following Friday; and
<b>“White Period”</b>	means any period during which the taking of a Restriction of Use would not result in any compensation being payable in accordance with paragraph 3.

## 1.2 *Suspension Notices*

Wherever a Suspension Notice is in force, the effects of that Suspension Notice shall be the subject of Clause 3.6 and not of this Schedule 4. A Restriction of Use shall only be treated as a Restriction of Use to the extent that it involves a Restriction of Use of all or any part of the Routes which is not covered by the restriction under that Suspension Notice.

## 1.3 *Possession*

Any reference in this contract to the term “possession”, whether on its own or in composite, should be construed as “Restriction of Use” as defined in this Part 3.

## 1.4 *White Period*

In respect of any Type 1 Restriction of Use, Type 2 Restriction of Use or Type 3 Restriction of Use, where a Restriction of Use starts before and/or ends after a White Period, the entire length of the Restriction of Use shall be taken into account when counting the cumulative total hours.

# 2 **Application of this Part**

## 2.1 *Entry into effect*

This Part 3 shall apply in respect of Restrictions of Use.

## 2.2 *Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Network Code*

The provisions of this Part 3 shall be without prejudice to:

- (a) - Network Rail's right to take Restrictions of Use under or pursuant to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement;
- (b) - the establishment of any amended Working Timetable under Part H of the Network Code; and
- (c) - any rights pursuant to the Network Code that the Train Operator may have to challenge any decision of Network Rail.

### 2.3 *Operator Restriction of Use*

Network Rail shall not be obliged to make any payments to the Train Operator for any one or more Restrictions of Use to the extent:

- (a) - required as a result of any damage to the Network or Environmental Damage which in each case:
  - (i) - arises wholly or mainly from the operations of the Train Operator or its failure to comply with its obligations under this contract; and
  - (ii) - Network Rail demonstrates is in excess of fair wear and tear arising from use of the Network by the Train Operator;
- (b) - requested by the Train Operator (other than for the purposes of inspection, maintenance, renewal or repair of the Network);
- (c) - required in connection with a Network Change proposed by the Train Operator under Condition G3; or
- (d) - the Restrictions of Use are related to the EG3 Project.

### 2.4 *Network Rail payments*

Subject to paragraph 2.3, Network Rail shall make payments to the Train Operator (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use calculated in accordance with paragraphs 2.5 to 2.7 and 2.10 where applicable.

### 2.5 *Type 1 Restriction of Use*

Network Rail shall make payments (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and 4 to the Train Operator in respect of any Type 1 Restriction of Use.

### 2.6 *Type 2 Restriction of Use*

- (a) - Except where paragraph 2.6(c) applies, Network Rail shall make payments (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and 4 to the Train Operator in respect of any Type 2 Restriction of Use.
- (b) - If either party reasonably believes or expects that the difference between RoU Direct Costs calculated in accordance with paragraph 6 and the costs calculated under paragraph 4 would exceed £10,000 then that party will be entitled to require

that the costs be calculated in accordance with paragraph 6 by serving an RoU Claim Notice within the time periods set out in paragraph 2.8.

- (c) - Following a request in accordance with paragraph 2.6(b), if it is agreed or determined that the difference between RoU Direct Costs calculated in accordance with paragraph 6 and the costs calculated under paragraph 4 exceeds £10,000 then the relevant party shall make payments to the other (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and 6.

## 2.7 *Type 3 Restriction of Use*

- (a) - Except where paragraph 2.7(c) applies, Network Rail shall make payments (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and 4 to the Train Operator in respect of any Type 3 Restriction of Use.
- (b) - If either party reasonably believes or expects that the difference between RoU Liability calculated in accordance with paragraph 7 and the costs and losses calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 would exceed £10,000 then that party will be entitled to require that the costs and losses be calculated in accordance with paragraph 7 instead by serving an RoU Claim Notice within the time periods set out in paragraph 2.8 (a “Type 3 Liability Claim”).
- (c) - Following a request in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b), if it is agreed or determined that the difference between RoU Liability calculated in accordance with paragraph 7 and the costs and losses calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 exceeds £10,000 then the relevant party shall make payments to the other (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraph 7.

## 2.8 *RoU Claim Notice*

- (a) - Either party wishing to make a request pursuant to Clause 2.6(b) or Clause 2.7(b) must notify the other that a Restriction of Use is a Type 2 Restriction of Use or a Type 3 Restriction of Use and that the circumstances in paragraph 2.6(b) or 2.7(b) (as applicable) apply within 56 days of the RoU Trigger Date relating to the Period in which that Restriction of Use commences.
- (b) - The notice referred to in paragraph 2.8(a) must, if provided by the Train Operator, include details of the estimate of the RoU Direct Costs or RoU Liability (as applicable) which the Train Operator has incurred in respect of the relevant Restriction of Use.

## 2.9 *Changes to Restrictions of Use*

- (a) - Where a single Restriction of Use falls within the definition of one type of Restriction of Use and there is a change which means that no Restriction of Use occurs or that the Restriction of Use occurs as another type of Restriction of Use, then that Restriction of Use shall be treated, for the purposes of the calculation and payment of compensation, as if it had always been the latter type of Restriction of Use (or, where applicable, as if it

had not been a Restriction of Use).

- (b) - For the purposes of paragraph 2.9(c), a Restriction of Use shall be deemed to be taken if and to the extent that it results in any difference between timetables of the type referred to in the definition of “Restriction of Use” when notified, whether or not the restriction giving rise to that Restriction of Use was subsequently cancelled in whole or in part.
- (c) - Subject to paragraph 2.9(d), where a change to a Restriction of Use reduces the impact of the Restriction of Use and accordingly changes its type or means that there is no Restriction of Use in accordance with paragraph 2.9(a), the Train Operator may, within 28 days of the date on which the change to the Restriction of Use was notified to the Train Operator by Network Rail, serve a notice on Network Rail which sets out any costs to which the Train Operator is already committed or has already incurred and any costs associated with responding to the Restriction of Use (both before and after the change). The Train Operator shall be entitled to recover such costs provided that such costs are reasonable and were properly committed or incurred in the circumstances. For the purposes of this paragraph 2.9(c), references to “costs” shall mean those categories of costs which the Train Operator would have been entitled to recover under this Schedule 4 for that type of Restriction of Use which the Restriction of Use was classified as prior to its change.
- (d) - Notwithstanding paragraph 2.9(c), where:
  - (i) - the notice served by the Train Operator under paragraph 2.9(c) is in respect of a cancellation of a Type 1 Restriction of Use that was notified to the Train Operator less than 12 weeks before the date on which that Type 1 Restriction of Use was scheduled to occur; and
  - (ii) - the costs to which the Train Operator is committed or which it has already incurred prior to the cancellation of the Type 1 Restriction of Use and any costs associated with responding to that cancellation, amount to £5000 or more,

the Train Operator shall be entitled to recover those costs provided that such costs are reasonable and were properly committed or incurred in the circumstances. For the purposes of this paragraph 2.9(d), references to “costs” shall mean those categories of costs described in the definition of “RoU Direct Costs” (save that references in that definition to “Type 2 Restriction of Use” shall be deemed to refer to “Type 1 Restriction of Use”).

#### 2.10 *Sustained Planned Disruption*

- (a) - If either party reasonably believes that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred then that party will be entitled to require that the costs and losses for the Restrictions of Use for the relevant services during the relevant SPD Period be calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 by serving a notice on the other (an “SPD Notice”) in accordance with paragraph 2.10(b).
- (b) - Unless otherwise agreed in writing, an SPD Notice must be served no later than the day falling 56 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement which followed the end of the relevant SPD Period and must include a short explanation of why it reasonably believes a

Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred and a statement of when the SPD Period commenced.

- (c) - Following the issue of an SPD Notice, either party may serve a notice (an “SPD Termination Notice”) stating that it reasonably believes that the relevant Sustained Planned Disruption is no longer occurring, such notice to include a short explanation of why the party serving it reasonably believes that the Sustained Planned Disruption has ceased and stating the Period in which such cessation has occurred. A party receiving an SPD Termination Notice shall within 30 days of its receipt by notice to the serving party either accept or reject the SPD Termination Notice and where it rejects the notice it shall include with its rejection notice a short explanation of why it reasonably believes the Sustained Planned Disruption is continuing. If the parties fail to reach agreement within 30 days after service of a rejection notice, or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached prior to that date, either party may notify the other that the dispute resolution procedure set out in paragraph 13.3 is to apply (save that references to paragraph 13.2 shall be construed as being references to this paragraph).
- (d) - Following the issue of an SPD Notice the party that issued that notice must serve a claim (an “SPD Claim”):
  - (i) - no later than the day falling 112 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement for the last Period in the relevant SPD Period; or
  - (ii) - where an SPD Period has exceeded 13 consecutive Periods in length or upon the termination or expiry of this contract, whichever comes first, unless otherwise agreed in writing, no later than the day falling 112 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement which followed the 13<sup>th</sup> consecutive Period or the termination or expiry of this contract (as applicable),whichever is the earlier.
- (e) - Provided a party has issued an SPD Notice in accordance with paragraph 2.10(b), nothing in paragraph 2.10(d) shall prevent that party from issuing more than one SPD Claim in respect of the same Sustained Planned Disruption, provided that:
  - (i) - each such SPD Claim relates to a different period within the said SPD Period (so there is no double-counting); and
  - (ii) - no SPD Claim can be issued after the last day for serving notice specified under paragraph 2.10(d).
- (f) - An SPD Claim must include details of when and why that party reasonably believes that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred and in particular:
  - (i) - if the claim is made by the Train Operator, such details as may reasonably be available of the RoU Liability which the Train Operator has incurred or reasonably expects to incur in respect of the relevant Restrictions of Use during the SPD Period; or



- (ii) - if the claim is made by Network Rail, the reasons why Network Rail reasonably believes that the Train Operator has been overcompensated or may be overcompensated by more than the relevant amount.
- (g) - Following the service of an SPD Claim, if and to the extent it is agreed or determined that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred in the period covered by the claim then the relevant party shall make payments to the other (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 in respect of the SPD Period (or where applicable the part of the SPD Period) covered by the SPD Claim.

#### 2.11 *Early notice of RoU Losses*

The parties may at any time engage in discussions on any matter likely to result in payments in respect of any RoU Losses and shall use reasonable endeavours to agree whether such RoU Losses calculated in accordance with paragraph 6, 7 or 8 are likely to arise and/or what mitigating actions should be contemplated to reduce or avoid such RoU Losses. The party initiating such discussions shall provide to the other reasonable evidence in writing of why it thinks such RoU Losses will arise or mitigating actions should be contemplated. Following any agreement or determination that such RoU Losses are likely to arise in connection with one or more future Restrictions of Use or that mitigating actions should be contemplated, the parties shall where reasonably practicable engage in discussions on any options for mitigating costs, revenue loss and/or disruption including any advance compensation for such Restriction(s) of Use to the extent such advance compensation would or would reasonably be expected to facilitate the mitigation of the contemplated disruption. Nothing in this contract shall prevent Network Rail and the Train Operator agreeing any options for mitigating costs and disruption in respect of any Restriction(s) of Use. Unless otherwise agreed, the timescales for claiming RoU Losses shall still apply.

#### 2.12 *Over-runs*

- (a) - For the purposes of this paragraph 2.12, an over-run ("Over-run") occurs where:
  - (i) - there is a Restriction of Use which is not an Operator Restriction of Use (the "First Restriction");
  - (ii) - following the end of the relevant period of difference between timetables referred to in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) of the definition of Restriction of Use which served to establish the existence of that Restriction of Use (the "First Restriction Period"), there is either:
    - (A) - a further period of at least one hour during which Services are Disrupted due to (1) any incident attributed under Schedule 8 to circumstances arising from any restriction of operation of the Network which are a consequence of the First Restriction or (2) any act or omission in connection with any activities planned or undertaken which are directly attributable to the First Restriction (including any failure to remove the First Restriction by the time scheduled for its removal in the Applicable Engineering Access Statement) but excluding any act or omission by the

Train Operator for which it would be allocated responsibility under this contract (the "Unplanned Over-run Period"); and/or

- (B) - a further Restriction of Use is taken which is at the same location as all or part of the First Restriction and directly connected with or attributable to any activities undertaken or planned to be undertaken under the First Restriction (a "Further Restriction" ),

in each case without there being any intervening period between the First Restriction and the relevant Unplanned Over-run Period or Further Restriction, which is not either a White Period, Unplanned Over-run Period or a Further Restriction.

- (b) - Where a Restriction of Use is subject to one or more Over-runs, then the entire duration from the start of the First Restriction to the end of the last Over-run in respect of the Restriction of Use shall be treated as making up a single Restriction of Use.

- (c) - Where there is an Over-run which results in a Service being Disrupted which:

- (i) - is not part of either a Type 2 or Type 3 Restriction of Use;
  - (ii) - lasts for more than one hour; and
  - (iii) - results in the Train Operator incurring costs in the category of RoU Direct Costs in relation to the Over-run in excess of £10,000,

then the Unplanned Over-run Period element of that Over-run (but not the relevant First Restriction Period or the period of any Further Restriction) shall for the purposes only of calculating RoU Direct Costs be deemed to constitute a Type 2 Restriction of Use.

- (d) - For the purposes of calculating RoU Liability under paragraph 7 (when it is agreed or determined that the requirements of paragraph 2.7(c) are satisfied) or paragraph 8 when there is agreed or determined to be a Sustained Planned Disruption, the amount of the RoU Liability shall be calculated:

- (i) - including costs, direct losses and expenses (including loss of revenue and any increase in RoU Variable Costs) reasonably incurred or reasonably expected to be incurred by the Train Operator as a consequence of any Unplanned Over-run Period; and
  - (ii) - offsetting any benefit as a consequence of the Unplanned Over-run Period including:
    - (A) - any reduction in RoU Variable Costs;
    - (B) - any payments made as result of paragraph 2.12(c); and
    - (C) - any payments received by the Train Operator under Schedule

- (e) - This paragraph 2.12 shall not result in any Unplanned Over-run Period being subject to either revenue loss compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use under paragraph 3 or costs compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use under paragraph 4.

### 3 Revenue loss compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use

#### 3.1 *Basis for calculations*

For each Period and for each Service Group, Network Rail shall calculate the compensation payable in respect of all Network Rail Restrictions of Use on each Restriction of Use Day in that Period by applying, in accordance with paragraphs 3.2 and 3.3, the formulae in paragraphs 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6. For the purposes of determining for this paragraph 3 to which Service Group a particular Train is allocated, a Train (or portion of a Train) shall be treated as allocated to a particular Service Group by reference to its Service Code, provided that where a particular Train (or portion of a Train) is given a different Service Code in the New Working Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the Applicable Timetable or a different Service Code in the Corresponding Day Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the New Working Timetable it shall be treated as part of the Service Group in relation to whichever of those Service Codes most correctly applies to that Train or, where both Service Codes could equally apply to that Train, to the Service Code applied to that Train in the New Working Timetable.

#### 3.2 *Separate calculations*

In applying the formula in paragraph 3.4, Network Rail shall calculate the compensation payable separately in respect of all:

- (a) - Network Rail Restrictions of Use which are taken into account in the New Working Timetable; and
- (b) - Network Rail Restrictions of Use which are not so taken into account but are taken into account in the Applicable Timetable.

#### 3.3 *Meaning of T1 and T2*

In paragraph 3.4:

- (a) - where Network Rail is making the calculation for the purpose of paragraph 3.2(a), T1 shall mean the Corresponding Day Timetable and T2 shall mean the New Working Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day; and
- (b) - where Network Rail is making the calculation for the purpose of paragraph 3.2(b), T1 shall mean the New Working Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day and T2 shall mean the Applicable Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day.

#### 3.4 *Formula*

The formula referred to in paragraph 3.1 is as follows:

$$NRP = \Sigma((WACM + NREJT) \bullet BF \bullet NRPR \bullet NF)$$

where:

- (z) NRP is the Network Rail Payment;

- (a)  $\Sigma$  is the sum across all Network Rail Restrictions of Use and all Restriction of Use Days in the Period;
- (b) WACM is the weighted average of Cancellation Minutes for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$WACM = (CM - NRPP) \bullet \Sigma \frac{(MPW \bullet CS)}{SS}$$

where:

CM<sup>129th</sup> is the Cancellation Minutes for the Service Group in question specified in column F of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

NRPP is the Network Rail performance point for the Service Group in question specified in column B of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

$\Sigma$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW<sup>129th</sup> is the weighting attributable to the Monitoring Point, as specified in column K of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

CS is the number by which the number of stops at that Monitoring Point scheduled for that day in T2 is less than SS as a result of the Network Rail Restriction of Use; and

SS is the number of stops at the Monitoring Point scheduled for that day in T1;

- (c) - NREJT is the extended Journey Time as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of Services in that Service Group, for the Restriction of Use Day, being Services which are not cancelled, calculated according to the following formula:

$$NREJT = EJT \bullet (1 - \Sigma \frac{(MPW \bullet CS)}{SS})$$

where:

$\Sigma$ , MPW, CS and SS have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4(b) above; and

EJT is the extended Journey Time as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of Services in that Service Group calculated according to the following formula:

if no Train in that Service Group is scheduled in T2 for that day, then EJT shall equal 0;

if otherwise,

EJT is the lesser of:

(i) - <sup>129th</sup> the number of minutes specified as the Cap for the Service Group in column G of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

(ii) -  $AJT \bullet ((u-v)/v)$ ,

provided always that if v equals or is greater than u, EJT shall equal 0;

where:

AJT is the average Journey Time for Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T1, and shall be equal to the aggregate of the Journey Times scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains divided by the aggregate number of Journeys scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains;

u is the average speed of Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T1, and shall be equal to the aggregate of the number of miles scheduled to be run in T1 by such Trains divided by the aggregate of the Journey Times scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains; and

v is the speed to which the average speed of Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T2 is reduced as a result of the Network Rail Restrictions of Use (calculated by reference to the aggregate of the number of miles which such Trains are scheduled to run in T2 divided by the aggregate of the end to end Journey Times scheduled in T2 in respect of such Trains),

and for the purposes of this paragraph 3.4:

“Journey”

means the journey of the Train scheduled in the relevant timetable from its station of origin to its destination station; provided that if a Train crosses a Service Group boundary then in respect of each Service Group the Train’s station of origin and destination station shall respectively mean the station at which the Train commences that part of its journey in that Service Group and the station at which it ends that part of its journey in that Service Group; and that where any Train splits to become more than one Train then that part of the Train’s journey up to the station where it splits shall be treated as one journey and each Train into which the Train splits shall be treated as making a separate journey; and

“Journey Time”

shall be calculated in respect of each journey by reference to the difference in minutes between the time of departure from the station of origin and the time of arrival at the destination station;

(d) - BF is the busyness factor, as calculated for each Service Group according to the following formula:

$$BF = \frac{\sum (MPW \bullet SS)}{AS}$$

where:

AS is the average number of stops at the Monitoring Point (being the Monitoring Point referred to in the definition of MPW) per day scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable; and

MPW and SS have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4(b); and

- (e) - <sup>129th</sup> NRPR is the Network Rail payment rate specified in column C of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8, as indexed according to the provisions of Schedule 8.

### 3.5 *High Speed Diversions*

Where there is a High Speed Diversion and WACM, as defined in paragraph 3.4(b), has a value equal to or less than zero then the following formula shall apply:

$$ANRP = \frac{TDR_{SG}}{TDT_{SG}} \bullet (CM - NRPP) \bullet NRPR \bullet BF \bullet NF$$

where:

ANRP is the additional Network Rail payment;

TDR<sub>SG</sub> is, in respect of each Service Group and each Restriction of Use Day on which a High Speed Diversion applies, the number of Trains in the Service Group scheduled in T2 to be subject to the High Speed Diversion;

TDT<sub>SG</sub> is the total number of Trains scheduled to be run in the Service Group in T1;

T1 and T2 shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.3; and

CM, NRPP, NRPR and BF shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4.

In such a situation, the Train Operator shall provide Network Rail with evidence, either that the High Speed Diversion has been common for the Services in question in the past or that the High Speed Diversion would arise as a result of a change in circumstances.

In default of agreement, in relation to the adequacy of such evidence, between the Train Operator and Network Rail within 28 days after the New Working Timetable is issued reflecting the relevant Network Rail Restriction of Use, the mechanism and procedure for dispute resolution set out in paragraphs 13.2, 13.3 and 13.4 shall apply.

### 3.6 *Train-Bus-Train Patterns*

If any Service Group on any day is subject to a Train-Bus-Train Pattern on account of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, and where WACM, as defined in paragraph 3.4(b), has a value equal to or less than zero, then Network Rail shall pay to the Train Operator an additional payment calculated as follows:

$$ANRP = \frac{TTS_{SG}}{TTR_{SG}} \bullet (CM - NRPP) \bullet DV \bullet NRPR \bullet BF \bullet NF$$

where:

ANRP is the additional Network Rail payment;

TTSSG is the total number of Trains scheduled in T2 to be run in the Service Group for that Restriction of Use Day to terminate at a destination other than that shown for those Trains due to a Train-Bus-Train Pattern in T1;

TTR<sub>SG</sub> is the total number of Trains scheduled to be run in the Service Group in T1;

T1 and T2 shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.3;

CM, NRPP, NRPR and BF shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4; and

DV shall have the value of 0.125,

provided that if:

TTR<sub>SG</sub> is less than TTSSG then  $\frac{TTS_{SG}}{TTR_{SG}}$  shall be deemed to have the value of one.

In such a situation the Train Operator shall provide Network Rail with evidence, either that the Train-Bus-Train Pattern resulting from the Network Rail Restriction of Use is an arrangement that has been commonly used in the past by that Train Operator on the Services in question, or that it has arisen due to a change in circumstances.

In default of agreement, in relation to the adequacy of such evidence, between the Train Operator and Network Rail within 28 days after the New Working Timetable is issued reflecting the relevant Network Rail Restriction of Use, the mechanism and procedure for dispute resolution set out in paragraphs 13.2, 13.3 and 13.4 shall apply.

## **4 Costs compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use**

### **4.1 Basis for calculations**

For each Period and for each Service Group, Network Rail shall calculate the compensation payable in respect of all Network Rail Restrictions of Use on each Restriction of Use Day in that Period by applying the formulae in paragraph 4.2. For the purposes of determining for this paragraph 4 to which Service Group a particular Train is allocated, a Train (or portion of a Train) shall be treated as allocated to a particular Service Group by reference to its Service Code, provided that where a particular Train (or portion of a Train) is given a different Service Code in the New Working Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the Applicable Timetable or a different Service Code in the Corresponding Day Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the New Working Timetable it shall be treated as part of the Service Group in relation to whichever of those Service Codes most correctly applies to that Train or, where both Service Codes could equally apply to that Train, to the Service Code applied to that Train in the New Working Timetable.

### **4.2 Cost compensation formula**

The formula referred to in paragraph 4.1 is as follows:

$$\text{Cost compensation} = \sum (\text{RRBC} + \text{TMC})$$

where:

- (a) -  $\sum$  is the sum across all applicable Network Rail Restrictions of Use and all Restriction of Use Days in the Period;
- (b) - RRBC is the rail replacement bus cost, for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{RRBC} = \text{EBM} \times \text{EBMPR}$$

Where:

EBM is the number of estimated bus miles for the Train Operator; and

EBMPR<sup>129th</sup> is the payment rate per EBM, which is £15.87.

If there is full bus replacement

$$\text{EBM} = \text{EBMW} \times \text{FBRmiles}$$

If there is partial bus replacement

$$\text{EBM} = \text{EBMW} \times 0.5 \times \text{PBRmiles} \times \text{ITS}$$

If there is no bus replacement (as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4)

$$\text{EBM} = \text{EBMW} \times 0$$

where:

EBMW is the weighting applicable to the affected section of route, as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

FBRmiles is the length of route, in miles, between the applicable pair of Viable Transfer Points over which train services are affected and for which full bus replacement is required as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

PBRmiles is the length of route, in miles, between the applicable pair of Viable Transfer Points over which train services are affected and for which partial bus replacement is required as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

ITS is 1 or the percentage of trains stopping at intermediate stations for those cases where EBMW = 50%; and

- (c) TMC<sup>129th</sup> is the cost or saving, expressed in pence per train mile and rounded to two decimal places, resulting from train mileage change, for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{TMC} = \text{TM} \times \text{TMPR}$$

where:

TM is the change in train mileage; and

TMPR is the payment rate per train mile, as stipulated in Annex C to this Part 3 of Schedule 4.



## **5 Estimated bus miles change mechanism**

### *5.1 Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Annex B*

Either party may by notice to the other propose that Annex B be amended in accordance with this paragraph 5.

### *5.2 Procedure for amendments to Annex B*

- (a) The party who wishes to amend Annex B shall notify the other party of any such proposed change and the date from which it proposes that such change will have effect:
  - (i) - where such change relates to a forthcoming timetable change, on or before the first day of the month which falls 6 months before the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date on which that timetable change is due to occur; and
  - (ii) - in any other case prior to the date from which it proposes such change shall have effect.
- (b) Any notice under sub-paragraph 5.2(a) shall specify as far as possible that party's proposed amendments to Annex B. Promptly following the service of any such notice the parties shall endeavour to agree whether Annex B should be amended in accordance with this paragraph 5 and if so the amendments.
- (c) If the parties fail to reach agreement within 90 days after service of the relevant notice, or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached prior to that date, the matter may be referred for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. In respect of any such dispute which is referred for resolution under the ADRR the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum shall have regard to any relevant criteria and/or policy statement most recently issued by ORR.
- (d) Any amendment to Annex B shall take effect only when it has been approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act. Accordingly, as soon as reasonably practicable after any such amendment is agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 5, the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that ORR is furnished with such amendment and sufficient information and evidence as it shall require to determine whether or not to approve the amendment.
- (e) Any amendment to Annex B shall apply with effect from:
  - (i) - the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (where paragraph 5.2 (a) (i) applies); or
  - (ii) - subject to paragraph 5.2 (d) the date proposed by the party requesting the change in accordance with paragraph 5.2 (a) (ii) (unless otherwise agreed by the parties or determined by the expert in relation to the change).

### *5.3 Costs of implementing amendment*

The party proposing the amendment to Annex B shall (subject to any determination of an expert as to costs, where a matter is referred to that expert under paragraph 5.2(c)) pay 90

percent of costs incurred by or on behalf of the other party in assessing and implementing the amendments to Annex B, provided that those costs shall be the minimum reasonably necessary to assess and implement that amendment.

## **6 RoU Direct Costs compensation for Type 2 Restrictions of Use**

### **6.1 Compensation arrangements**

- (a) Following receipt of an RoU Claim Notice in respect of a Type 2 Restriction of Use, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall (if they have not already done so) commence negotiations in respect of the RoU Direct Costs compensation to be paid by one party to the other in respect of such Type 2 Restriction of Use and, subject to paragraph 10, shall continue such negotiations in good faith until they are concluded.
- (b) Once the compensation referred to in paragraph 6.1(a) has been agreed or determined (and has been compared against any amounts calculated under paragraph 4 together with any other amounts paid or due to the Train Operator from Network Rail in relation to such Restriction of Use) then, in the event of:
  - (i) a shortfall for the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator shall be the full amount of the RoU Direct Costs actually incurred by the Train Operator less any amounts calculated under paragraph 4 which have already been paid or are due for such Restriction of Use and any other amounts in respect of any RoU Direct Costs received by the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restriction of Use; or
  - (ii) an overpayment by Network Rail to the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail shall be the difference between the amount received by the Train Operator which was calculated under paragraph 4 and the RoU Direct Costs actually incurred by the Train Operator in respect of such Restriction of Use.
- (c) Network Rail shall include in the statement provided by it in respect of each Period under paragraph 13.1(a) details of the compensation agreed or determined under this paragraph 6 and paragraph 10 to be payable in respect of any Type 2 Restriction of Use taken in that Period and that compensation shall be due and payable by the relevant party to the other in accordance with paragraph 13.1.

## **7 RoU Liability compensation for Type 3 Restrictions of Use**

### **7.1 Compensation arrangements**

- (a) Following receipt of an RoU Claim Notice in respect of a Type 3 Restriction of Use, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall (if they have not already done so) commence negotiations in respect of the RoU Liability compensation to be paid by one party to the other in respect of the Type 3 Restriction of Use and, subject to paragraph 10, shall continue such negotiations in good faith until they are concluded.

- (b) - Once the compensation referred to in paragraph 7.1(a) has been agreed or determined (and has been compared against the aggregate of any amounts calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 together with any other amounts paid or due to the Train Operator from Network Rail in relation to such Restriction of Use) then, in the event of:
  - (i) - a shortfall for the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator shall be the full amount of the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator less any amounts calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 which have already been paid or are due for such Restriction of Use and any other amounts received by the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restriction of Use; or
  - (ii) - an overpayment by Network Rail to the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail shall be the difference between the amount received by the Train Operator which was calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 and the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator in respect of such Restriction of Use.
- (c) - Network Rail shall include in the statement provided by it in respect of each Period under paragraph 13.1(a) details of the compensation agreed or determined under this paragraph 7 and paragraph 10 to be payable in respect of any Type 3 Restriction of Use taken in that Period and that compensation shall be due and payable by the relevant party to the other in accordance with paragraph 13.1.

## **8 Sustained Planned Disruption payments**

### **8.1 *Payment arrangements***

- (a) - Following an agreement or determination that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred during an SPD Period, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall (if they have not already done so) commence negotiations in respect of the RoU Liability compensation to be paid by one party to the other in respect of the Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period and, subject to paragraph 10, shall continue such negotiations in good faith until they are concluded.
- (b) - Once the compensation referred to in paragraph 8.1(a) has been agreed or determined (and has been compared against the aggregate of any amounts calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 together with any other amounts paid or due to the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restriction of Use) then, in the event of:
  - (i) - a shortfall for the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of the Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period shall be the full amount of the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator less any amounts calculated under paragraphs 3 and 4 which have already been paid or are due for Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period and any other amounts received by the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restrictions of Use; or

- (ii) - an overpayment by Network Rail to the Train Operator, the compensation to be paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail shall be the difference between the amount received by the Train Operator for Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period and the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator during the same SPD Period.
- (c) - Following any agreement or determination of an amount to be paid by one party to the other in respect of a Sustained Planned Disruption that amount shall (subject to the terms of any compensation arrangements agreed in writing between the parties) be due and payable by one party to the other in accordance with paragraph 13.1.
- (d) - Where a Sustained Planned Disruption applies due to a circumstance which it is agreed or determined affects a part only of the Train Operator's services (including whether by reference to geographic location or Service Group), then in agreeing or determining the RoU Liability in respect of that SPD the RoU Liability in respect of the part of the Train Operator's services not affected by that circumstance shall (unless otherwise proven) be presumed to be equal to the payments made under paragraphs 3 and 4 of this Schedule 4 in respect of those other services.

## 9 Notification Factors

### 9.1 *Early notification*

The Notification Factor in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column C of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent that:

- (a) the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the New Working Timetable; or
- (b)
  - (i) - details of the Network Rail Restriction of Use are notified to the Train Operator on or before D-26 for the Timetable Period in respect of the Restriction of Use Day but, at the request of the Train Operator (as accepted by Network Rail), are not reflected in the New Working Timetable; and
  - (ii) - <sup>129th</sup> subject to paragraph 9.1(b)(iii), the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Working Timetable as set out in the Performance Monitoring System at 22:00 hours on the day which is 12 Weeks before the Restriction of Use Day; or
  - (iii) - where paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) does not apply because the Train Operator has failed to give Network Rail a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9, the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable in respect of the Restriction of Use Day.

### 9.2 *Notification by TW-22*

The NF in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column D of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent that paragraph 9.1 does not apply, and:

- (a) details of the Network Rail Restriction of Use are notified to the Train Operator by TW-22; and
- (b)
  - (i) <sup>129th</sup> the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Working Timetable as set out in the Performance Monitoring System at 22:00 hours on the day which is 12 Weeks before the Restriction of Use Day; or
  - (ii) where paragraph 9.2(b)(i) does not apply because the Train Operator has failed to give Network Rail a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9, the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable in respect of the Restriction of Use Day.

### 9.3 *Late Notification*

The NF in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column E of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent paragraphs 9.1 and 9.2 do not apply but the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable, and includes where paragraph 9.1(b) or paragraph 9.2 would have been applicable but for a failure by Network Rail to fulfil the terms of paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) or paragraph 9.2(b)(i) respectively, notwithstanding the Train Operator having given a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9.

## 10 **Dispute resolution**

If the Train Operator and Network Rail fail to reach agreement as required under paragraph 2.6 (c), 2.7 (c), 2.10 (g), 2.11, 6, 7 or 8 within 28 days following provision of the RoU Claim Notice, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

## 11 **Schedule 8 application**

If and to the extent that a Network Rail Restriction of Use is not reflected in the Applicable Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day, the amount of compensation (if any) shall be calculated in accordance with Schedule 8 (to the exclusion of any compensation under this Schedule 4 except as provided in paragraph 2.12).

## 12 **Restriction of Use Day and Corresponding Day**

### 12.1 *Information provision*

In respect of any Restriction of Use Day for which compensation may be payable in a Period under paragraphs 3 and 4, Network Rail shall accurately record such information as it uses and as may properly and reasonably be required to make the calculations required under paragraphs 3 and 4 (including the determination of NF and the relevant version of the Working Timetable referred to in paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) or paragraph 9.2(b)(i)). Network Rail shall maintain that information until the compensation payable

under paragraphs 3 and 4 in respect of that Period is finally agreed or determined and provide such information to the Train Operator at its reasonable request.

#### 12.2 *Corresponding Day*

- (a) If, for the purpose of identifying a Corresponding Day, no day is found under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of the definition “Corresponding Day” and the parties have failed to reach agreement on the Corresponding Day by the date falling eight Weeks before the relevant Timetable Change Date then either party may require that the identification of the Corresponding Day be resolved as a dispute in accordance with the ADRR.
- (b) The parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum’s remit shall be to:
  - (i) reach a decision which is fair and reasonable; and
  - (ii) identify the day in either any version of the Working Timetable or any version of the New Working Timetable on or before D -26 in either case which has been produced in accordance with the Network Code as at the Restriction of Use Day and which most closely reflects the Services which would have been scheduled on the first day (as that term is used in the definition of Corresponding Day save that in respect of any Restriction of Use lasting more than two Timetable Periods, the first day may occur in any year preceding the Timetable Period) but for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or
  - (iii) where a Corresponding Day cannot be identified in accordance with paragraph 12.2(b)(ii) above, determine a notional Corresponding Day. The relevant ADRR Forum may have regard, where appropriate, to any pattern of services which may reasonably be expected to be operated during the relevant period when the Restriction of Use is being taken in the event of the permanent absence of any Corresponding Day.

### 13 **Payment procedures**

#### 13.1 *Network Rail Restrictions of Use*

- (a) Within 14 days after the end of each Period, Network Rail shall provide to the Train Operator a statement (the “Day 42 Statement”) showing:
  - (i) all Network Rail Restrictions of Use taken during that Period;
  - (ii) any compensation calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and/or 4 payable by Network Rail in respect of the Network Rail Restrictions of Use identified; and
  - (iii) following any agreement or determination in the Period referred to in paragraph 13.1(a) of any RoU Losses in respect of a Type 2 Restriction of Use, a Type 3 Restriction of Use or a Sustained Planned Disruption (as applicable), any payment to be made by one party to the other,

in sufficient detail to enable the Train Operator to make an informed assessment thereof.

- (b) The aggregate liabilities of Network Rail and the Train Operator, in respect of any and all compensation for which either is liable to the other under this Part 3 and under Part 5 in respect of each Period shall, to the extent that such compensation is not under dispute, be set off against each other and the balance (if any) shall be payable by Network Rail or the Train Operator, as the case may be, within 35 days after the end of that Period.

### 13.2 *Disputes*

Within 10 days of receipt of a statement from Network Rail under paragraph 13.1, the Train Operator shall notify Network Rail of any aspects of the statement which it disputes, giving reasons for any dispute. Save to the extent that disputes are so notified, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of the statement.

### 13.3 *Dispute resolution*

The procedure for resolving disputes notified under paragraph 13.2 shall be as follows:

- (a) within seven days of service of any notice under paragraph 13.2, the parties shall meet to discuss the disputed aspects of the statement with a view to resolving all disputes in good faith;
- (b) if, within seven days of that meeting (the “first meeting”), the parties are for any reason still unable to agree the disputed aspects of the statement, each party shall promptly (and in any event within seven days) prepare a written summary of the disputed aspects of the statement and the reasons for each such dispute and shall submit the summaries to the senior officer of each party;
- (c) within 28 days of the first meeting, the senior officers shall meet with a view to resolving all disputes;
- (d) if no resolution results within 14 days of that meeting, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

### 13.4 *Payments in the event of a dispute*

Where any amount under paragraph 13.1 is in dispute:

- (a) the undisputed amount shall be paid in accordance with paragraph 13.1;
- (b) the disputed amount shall be paid within 28 days after the dispute is resolved or determined to the extent that the amount in dispute is adjudged or resolved to be payable; and
- (c) the disputed amount shall carry interest (incurred daily and compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the date on which such amount would but for such dispute have been due to be paid until the date of payment.

## 14 **Indexation**

- 14.1 <sup>129th</sup> The formula applicable to this paragraph 14 is:

$$R_t = R_{t-1} \times \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{t-2})}{CPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$R_t$  is the relevant value in the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$R_{t-1}$  is the relevant value in the Relevant Year  $t-1$ ;

$CPI_{t-1}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year  $t-1$ ; and

$CPI_{t-2}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year  $t-2$ .”;

14.2 <sup>129th</sup> Each of the EBMPR and TMPR (respectively defined in paragraph 4.2) and Defined Service Group Revenues shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year  $t$  in accordance with the formula set out in paragraph 14.1 except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $R_t$  shall have the value specified in:

- (a) paragraph 4.2 in respect of the EBMPR, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor;
- (b) Annex C to this Part 3 of Schedule 4 in respect of TMPR, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and
- (c) Annex D to this Part 3 of Schedule 4 in respect of the Defined Service Group Revenues, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor,

and in the next following Relevant Year  $R_{t-1}$  shall respectively have the same value.

14.3 Each of the SPD Cost Threshold No.1 and SPD Cost Threshold No.2 shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year  $t$  in accordance with the formula set out in paragraph 14.1 except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on <sup>129th</sup> 1 April 2019,  $R_t$  shall have the relevant value specified in the definition of “SPD Cost Threshold No.1”, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; or “SPD Cost Threshold No. 2” , multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; as appropriate, set out in paragraph 1.1 of this Schedule 4 and in the next following Relevant Year  $R_{t-1}$  shall respectively have the same value.



**Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Notification Factors<sup>129th</sup>**

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
<b>First Transpennine Express Limited</b>					
North Trans Pennine	EA01	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
South Trans Pennine	EA02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Preston - Scotland	EA07	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>Abellio East Anglia Limited</b>					
Southend & Southminster	EB02	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southend & Southminster	EB02	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Great Eastern Outers	EB03	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Great Eastern Outers	EB03	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Anglia Inter City	EB04	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Anglia Inter City	EB04	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Anglia Locals	EB05	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
West Anglia Outers	EB06	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
West Anglia Outers	EB06	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
West Anglia Inners	EB07	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
West Anglia Inners	EB07	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
<b>Grand Central Railway Company Limited</b>					
Kings x - Sunderland	EC01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kings x - Bradford	EC02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Arriva Rail North Limited</b>					
Tyne, Tees & Wear	ED01	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
Lancashire & Cumbria	ED02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
West & North Yorkshire Inter Urban	ED04	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
West & North Yorkshire Local	ED05	All Trains	0.60	0.60	0.88
South & East Yorkshire Inter Urban	ED06	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
South & East Yorkshire Local	ED07	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
North Manchester	ED08	Off-Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
North Manchester	ED08	Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
Merseyrail City Lines	ED09	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
South Manchester	ED10	Off-Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
South Manchester	ED10	Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
Lancashire & Cumbria Inter Urban	ED11	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>First Greater Western Limited</b>					
London - Bristol	EF01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London - South Wales	EF02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London - Cotswolds	EF03	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London - West Of England	EF04	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Outer Thames Valley - London	EF05	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Outer Thames Valley - London	EF05	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Inner Thames Valley - London	EF06	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Inner Thames Valley - London	EF06	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Reading & Oxford Suburban	EF07	All Trains	0.69	0.69	0.90
Thames Valley Branches	EF08	All Trains	0.69	0.69	0.90

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
North Downs	EF09	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Bristol Suburban	EF10	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Devon	EF11	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Plymouth & Cornwall	EF12	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
South Wales - South Coast	EF13	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>XC Trains Limited</b>					
CrossCountry Inter City	EH01	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
CrossCountry Local & Provincial	EH02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>West Midlands Trains Limited</b>					
West Midlands - Snow Hill	EJ01	Off-Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
West Midlands - Snow Hill	EJ01	Peak	0.36	0.36	0.93
Trent Valley	EJ02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
West Midlands - New Street (Local)	EJ03	Off-Peak	0.60	0.60	0.88
West Midlands - New Street (Local)	EJ03	Peak	0.60	0.60	0.88
West Midlands Inter Urban	EJ04	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
WCML: London - Northampton	EJ05	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
WCML: London - Northampton	EJ05	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
WCML: Branches	EJ06	All Trains	0.60	0.60	0.88
<b>Arriva Rail London Limited</b>					
Orbitals	EK01	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Orbitals	EK01	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
London - Watford (D.C Lines)	EK02	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
London - Watford (D.C Lines)	EK02	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
East London Lines	EK03	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
East London Lines	EK03	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
ARL West Anglia	EK04	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
ARL West Anglia	EK04	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Romford – Upminster	EK05	All Trains	0.69	0.69	0.90
<b>East Midlands Trains Limited</b>					
East Midlands Local	EM01	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
East Midlands Regional	EM02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Liverpool - Norwich	EM03	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
East Midlands Inter City	EM04	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
East Midlands Inter Urban	EM05	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Serco Caledonian Sleepers Limited</b>					
Sleepers	ES01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Govia Thameslink Railway Limited</b>					
Thameslink North Outer (MML)	ET01	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Thameslink North Outer (MML)	ET01	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Thameslink Sussex Outer	ET02	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Thameslink Sussex Outer	ET02	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Thameslink South Metro	ET03	Off Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Thameslink South Metro	ET03	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Great Northern Metro	ET04	Off Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
Great Northern Metro	ET04	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Great Northern Outer	ET05	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Great Northern Outer	ET05	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southern Coastway	ET07	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southern Outer	ET08	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southern Outer	ET08	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southern Metro	ET09	Off Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Southern Metro	ET09	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Southern West London Line	ET10	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Southern West London Line	ET10	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Gatwick Express	ET11	Off Peak	0.31	0.31	0.90
Gatwick Express	ET11	Peak	0.31	0.31	0.90
Thameslink North Metro (MML)	ET12	Off Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Thameslink North Metro (MML)	ET12	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Thameslink Kent Outer	ET13	Off Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Thameslink Kent Outer	ET13	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>MTR Corporation (Crossrail) Limited</b>					
Crossrail East	EX01	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Crossrail East	EX01	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Crossrail West	EX02	Off-Peak	0.31	0.31	0.90
Crossrail West	EX02	Peak	0.31	0.31	0.90
<b>Abellio ScotRail Limited</b>					

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
Express	HA01	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
East Coast Suburban	HA02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
South West Rural	HA03	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Highland Rural	HA04	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Ayrshire and Inverclyde	HA05	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Glasgow Suburban South	HA06	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Glasgow Suburban North	HA07	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
North Electrics & Argyle Line	HA08	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>London North Eastern Railway Limited</b>					
ANGLO - SCOTTISH	HB01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
WEST YORKSHIRE	HB02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
WEST YORKSHIRE (Kings X - Bradford / Hull)	HB04	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
ANGLO - SCOT (Aberdeen / Inverness)	HB05	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>East Coast Trains Limited</b>					
London - Edinburgh		All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Merseyrail Electrics 2002 Limited</b>					
Northern Lines	HE01	All Trains	0.60	0.60	0.88
Wirral Lines	HE02	All Trains	0.60	0.60	0.88
<b>West Coast Trains Limited</b>					
London Euston - Birmingham/Wolverhampton	HF01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London Euston - North Wales	HF02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
London Euston - Manchester	HF03	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London Euston - Liverpool	HF04	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London Euston - Carlisle/Scotland	HF06	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
London - Scotland via West Midlands	HF08	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Keolis Amey Operations / Gweithrediadau Keolis Amey Limited</b>					
South, West & Central Wales	HL02	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Wales to England	HL03	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Cambrian	HL04	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Cardiff Valleys	HL05	Off-Peak	0.60	0.60	0.88
Cardiff Valleys	HL05	Peak	0.60	0.60	0.88
Marches	HL06	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
North Wales Rural	HL07	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
Inter Urban North Wales	HL08	All Trains	0.36	0.36	0.93
<b>The Chiltern Railway Company Limited</b>					
Met	HO01	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Met	HO01	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Birmingham	HO02	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Birmingham	HO02	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Joint	HO03	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Joint	HO03	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Oxford	HO04	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Oxford	HO04	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92

	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW-22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
<b>Trenitalia c2c Limited</b>					
London-Southend/Shoeburyness (HT02op)	HT01	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
London-Southend/Shoeburyness (HT01p)	HT01	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>London &amp; South Eastern Railway Limited</b>					
Kent Mainline (Off Peak)	HU01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kent Metro (Off Peak)	HU02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kent Rural	HU03	All Trains	0.69	0.69	0.90
Kent Mainline (Peak)	HU04	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kent Metro (Peak)	HU05	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kent High Speed (Peak)	HU06	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Kent High Speed (Off Peak)	HU07	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>First MTR South Western Trains Limited</b>					
Main Suburban	HY01	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Main Suburban	HY01	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
South Hampshire Locals	HY02	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - West England	HY03	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - West England	HY03	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - Farnham / Alton	HY04	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - Farnham / Alton	HY04	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Windsor Inners	HY05	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Windsor Inners	HY05	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Windsor Outers	HY06	Off-Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90



	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>Service Group Description</b>	<b>Service Group Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>By D-26</b>	<b>By TW- 22</b>	<b>After TW-22</b>
Windsor Outers	HY06	Peak	0.69	0.69	0.90
Waterloo - Portsmouth	HY07	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - Portsmouth	HY07	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - Weymouth	HY08	Off-Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
Waterloo - Weymouth	HY08	Peak	0.44	0.44	0.92
<b>Hull Trains Company Limited</b>					
Kings Cross - Hull	PF01	All Trains	0.44	0.44	0.92

## Annex B to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Lookup Table for EBM Weights<sup>122nd</sup>

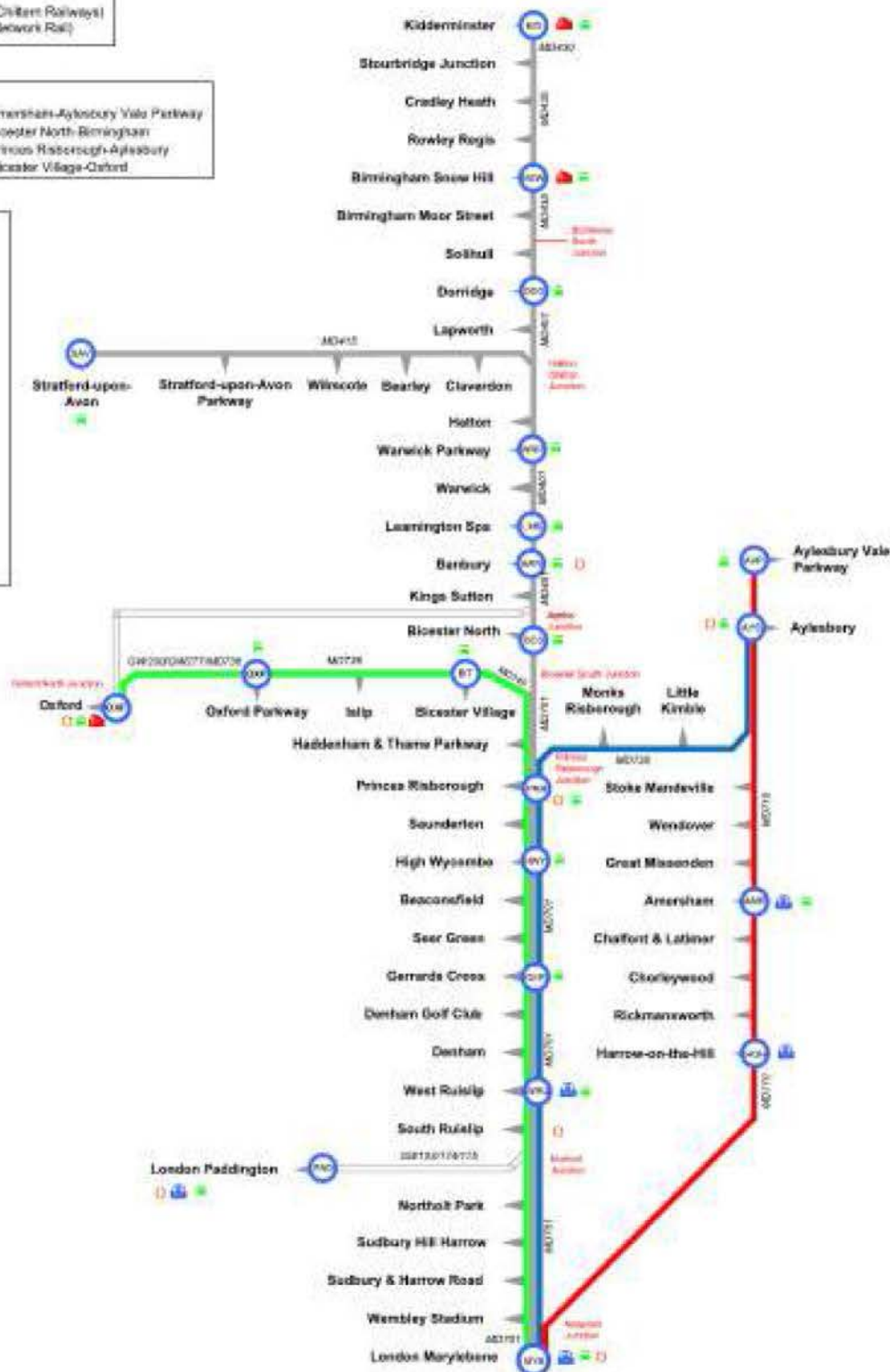
Viable Transfer Point [VTP]	Viable Transfer Point [VTP]	Applicable Infrastructure Rules	Other Operating Rules	S4CS Code	Description of Possession Response	Comments	Service Group	% Applicable	FULL Bus Replacement (100%)				PARTIAL Bus Replacement (50% x X%)					No Bus Replacement (0%) <sup>106th</sup>	EBMs Total	
									From	To	Miles	Trains	From	To	Miles	Trains	% Trains			
MD701 / MD710 London to Aylesbury via Amersham																				
London Marylebone (MYB)	Harrow on the Hill (HOH)			HO001	No bus replacement - passengers use LUL between Harrow and Baker Street.													0	0	
																	0	0		
																0	0			
Harrow on the Hill (HOH)	Amersham (AMR)			HO002	Partial bus replacement Harrow on the Hill to Amersham (Trains restart at Amersham).		HO01						HOH	AMR	14.5		100%	0	0	
																	0	0		
																0	0			
Amersham (AMR)	Aylesbury (AYS)			HO003			HO01	100%	AMR	AYS	14.25							0	0	
																	0	0		
																0	0			
Aylesbury (AYS)	Aylesbury Vale Parkway (AVP)			HO017			HO01	100%	AYS	AVP	2.25							0	0	
																	0	0		
																0	0			
MD720 Princes Risborough – Aylesbury																				
Princes Risborough (PRR)	Aylesbury (AYS)			HO004			HO03	100%	PRR	AYS	7.5							0	0	
																		0	0	
																	0	0		
MD701 London Marylebone - Princes Risborough via High Wycombe																				
London Marylebone (MYB)	West Ruislip (WRU)			HO005	No bus replacement - Trains generally diverted to London Paddington or passengers to use LUL.		HO02											0	0	
							HO03											0	0	
							HO04											0	0	
West Ruislip (WRU)	Gerrards Cross (GER)			HO006	Full bus replacement West Ruislip to Gerrards Cross for HO03. Partial bus replacement West Ruislip to Gerrards Cross for HO02 and HO04, with 1 tph diverted via Amersham.		HO02						WRU	GER	5.5		100%	0	0	
							HO03	100%	WRU	GER	5.5							0	0	
							HO04						WRU	GER	5.5		100%	0	0	
Gerrards Cross (GER)	High Wycombe (HWY)			HO007	Full bus replacement Gerrards Cross to High Wycombe for HO03. Partial bus replacement Gerrards Cross to High Wycombe for HO02 and HO04, with 1 tph diverted via Amersham.		HO02						GER	HWY	9		100%	0	0	
							HO03	100%	GER	HWY	9							0	0	
							HO04						GER	HWY	9		100%	0	0	
High Wycombe (HWY)	Princes Risborough (PRR)			HO008	Full bus replacement High Wycombe to Princes Risborough for HO03. Partial bus replacement High Wycombe to Princes Risborough for HO02 and HO04 with 1 tph diverted via Amersham.		HO02						HWY	PRR	8.25		100%	0	0	
							HO03	100%	HWY	PRR	8.25							0	0	
							HO04						HWY	PRR	8.25		100%	0	0	
MD401 / MD430 / MD435 / MD701 Princes Risborough – Kidderminster																				
Princes Risborough	Bicester North (BCS)			HO009	Partial bus replacement Princes Risborough to Bicester North with option to divert trains to Bicester Village.		HO02							PRR	BCS	18.75		100%	0	0

(PRR)																			0	0
																			0	0
Bicester North (BCS)	Banbury (BAN)			HO010	Partial bus replacement Bicester North to Banbury with option to divert trains to Oxford for services to London.		HO02						BCS	BAN	14		100%		0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
Banbury (BAN)	Leamington Spa (LMS)			HO011			HO02	100%	BAN	LMS	20								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
Leamington Spa (LMS)	Warwick Parkway (WRP)			HO012			HO02	100%	LMS	WRP	3.25								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
Warwick Parkway (WRP)	Dorridge (DDG)			HO013			HO02	100%	WRP	DDG	9.5								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
Dorridge (DDG)	Birmingham Snow Hill (BSW)			HO014			HO02	100%	DDG	BSW	10.5								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
Birmingham Snow Hill (BSW)	Kidderminster (KID)			HO015	No bus replacement - passengers use London Midland services or London Midland buses.														0	0
																			0	0
MD415 Stratford-Upon-Avon branch																				
Warwick Parkway (WRP)	Stratford-Upon-Avon (SAV)			HO016			HO02	100%	WRP	SAV	12								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
MD701 / MD745 / MD736 Princes Risborough via Bicester Chord to Oxford Parkway																				
Princes Risborough (PRR)	Bicester Village (BIT)			HO018	Partial bus replacement Princes Risborough to Bicester Village with option to divert trains to Bicester North		HO04						PRR	BIT	18.75		100%		0	0
																			0	0
Bicester Village (BIT)	Oxford Parkway (OXF)			HO019			HO04	100%	BIT	OXF	8.25								0	0
																			0	0
																			0	0
MD736 / GW277 / GW200 Oxford Parkway to Oxford																				
Oxford Parkway (OXF)	Oxford (OXF)			HO020			HO04	100%	OXF	OXF	3.5								0	0

**Final version details**  
 Version Number 6  
 Date - 15/12/18  
 Approved by - David Mufugo (Chiltern Railways)  
 Approved by - Julia Stanyard (Network Rail)

**Service Groups**  
 H001 Marylebone-Amersham-Aylesbury Vale Parkway  
 H002 Marylebone-Bicester North-Birmingham  
 H003 Marylebone-Princes Risborough-Aylesbury  
 H004 Marylebone-Bicester Village-Oxford

Viable Transfer Point (VTP)  
 VTP suitable for transfer to buses  
 VTP suitable for transfer to other DfM  
 VTP suitable for transfer to LUL or Metro  
 VTP start of diversionary route  
 Normal passenger service  
 Diversionary route



**Annex C to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Payment Rate per train mile<sup>129th</sup>**

<b>Service Group</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Compensation Rate</b>	<b>Total Train Cost per Mile (Pence)</b>
HO01	Met (Off Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO01	Met (Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO02	Birmingham (Off Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO02	Birmingham (Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO03	Joint (Off Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO03	Joint (Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO04	Oxford (Off Peak)	LSE	[     ]
HO04	Oxford (Peak)	LSE	[     ]

**Annex D to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Defined Service Group Revenue<sup>129th</sup>**

<b>Service Group</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Defined Service Group Revenue</b>
HO01 Off-Peak	Met	[     ]
HO01 Peak	Met	[     ]
HO02 Off-Peak	Birmingham	[     ]
HO02 Peak	Birmingham	[     ]
HO03 Off-Peak	Joint	[     ]
HO03 Peak	Joint	[     ]
HO04 Off-Peak	Oxford	[     ]
HO04 Peak	Oxford	[     ]



## PART 5: ACCESS CHARGE SUPPLEMENT FOR RESTRICTIONS OF USE<sup>129th</sup>

- 1 The Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of an Access Charge Supplement for Restrictions of Use (ACSRU) in respect of each Period equal to 1/13 of the amount specified below (as indexed in accordance with paragraph 2) in respect of the Relevant Year commencing 1 April in which the first day of the relevant Period falls:

Year	£
2019-20	1,368,022
2020-21	1,074,877
2021-22	1,911,297
2022-23	1,723,839
2023-24	1,215,674

Each such payment shall be made within 35 days after the end of the relevant Period.

- 2 Each such amount specified in paragraph 1 shall be adjusted in respect of payments made relating to Periods in the Relevant Year  $t$  in accordance with the following formula:

$$ACSRU_{pt} = ACSRU_t \times \left( 1 + \frac{CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{2018}}{CPI_{2018}} \right) \times \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

$ACSRU_{pt}$  is the actual amount, expressed in pounds sterling and rounded to zero decimal places, payable in the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$ACSRU_t$  is the relevant amount specified in paragraph **Error! Reference source not found.** of this Part 5 for the Relevant Year  $t$  (before indexation);

$CPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 14.1 of Part 3 of this Schedule 4; and

$CPI_{2018}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2018,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $ACSRU_t$  shall have the relevant value specified in the relevant column of the table in paragraph 1.



## **Schedule 4A Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications<sup>73rd</sup>**

### **1 Automatic effect**

#### **1.1 General**

This Contract shall have effect:

- (a) with the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications; and
- (b) from the date,

specified by the ORR in a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications.

#### **1.2 Retrospective effect**

A Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications may have retrospective effect.

### **2 Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications**

#### **2.1 Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 4 Modification**

In respect of the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications:

- (a) the parties shall, within fourteen (14) days from the Start Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications;
- (b) each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) the ORR's Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) the negotiations shall not continue after the Backstop Date.

#### **2.2 Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications - failure to agree**

If the parties fail to agree the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications on or before the Backstop Date:

- (a) the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
- (b) Network Rail shall within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

#### **2.3 Use of the ORR's Criteria in arbitration**

If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 2.2, the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:

- (a) determine the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications in accordance with the ORR's Criteria and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to establish the requisite Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications;
- (b) provide reasons for his award; and

- (c) state the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, give the reasons.

#### 2.4 Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – notice to the ORR

Not later than seven (7) days after the Backstop Date or the conclusion of arbitration, as the case may be, the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) stating the reasons for the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications;
- (b) stating the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) giving such other information as the ORR may have requested.

#### 2.5 Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – the ORR's consent

If the ORR is satisfied with the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 2.4, and it gives a notice to that effect, such modifications shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 1.1.

#### 2.6 Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications – the ORR's refusal of consent

If the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications, it may:

- (a) require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.4 for agreeing Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications itself and give a notice specifying such Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications.

#### 2.7 Payment adjustments

Within ten (10) Working Days of the date of any notice referred to in paragraph 1.1 the parties shall make such adjustments to the payments made under Schedule 4 (Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules <sup>MOD A(i)</sup> and Restrictions of Use) of this Contract as are necessary to ensure that the parties are in the financial position in respect of the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications as if those modifications had had effect from the date specified in the notice given under paragraph 1.1.

### 3 Procedural matters

#### 3.1 Co-operation and information

If the ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications or proposed Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications:

- (a) the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by the ORR; and
- (b) if that party fails timeously to do so, the ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without

the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

### 3.2 The ORR's Criteria

Any Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications shall:

- (a) be drafted to meet a high standard of simplicity, clarity and legal precision;
- (b) use definitions, terminology and numbering, including any bespoke provisions based on previous track access agreements, which are consistent with the defined terms, terminology and numbering used in this Contract;
- (c) take account, where relevant, of the 'Criteria and procedures for the approval of track access contracts' published by the Office of Rail Regulation and dated 21 August 2009; and
- (d) take account of the duties of the ORR under Section 4 of the Act;

### 3.3 Procedural modifications

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 2 for the Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) such procedure may be modified by the ORR by a Notice of Procedural Modifications; but
- (b) the ORR may only give a Notice of Procedural Modifications if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in Section 4 of the Act or if it is requested by both parties.

### 3.4 Dates

In this Schedule:

- (a) where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by the ORR, it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) any notice given by the ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

### 3.5 Consolidated contract

Not later than twenty eight (28) days after the giving of a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications, Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and ORR a copy of this Contract as so modified.

### 3.6 Saving

Nothing in this Schedule affects the right of either party to approach and obtain from the ORR guidance in relation to Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications.

## 4 Definitions

In this Schedule 4A:

**Backstop Date** means eighteen (18) months after the implementation of the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable

**Notice of Consent** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.5;

**Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.6(b);

**Notice of Procedural Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 3.3 modifying any aspect of the procedures in this Schedule;

**ORR's Criteria** means the criteria set out in paragraph 3.2;

**Start Date** means the date of implementation of the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable; and

**Relevant Schedule 4 Modifications** means any modifications to Annex B or Annex C of Part 3 to Schedule 4 resulting from the EG3 Phase 2 Works.

## Schedule 5 The Services and the Specified Equipment<sup>114th</sup>

### 1 Definitions

1.1 In this Schedule unless the context otherwise requires:

<b>Applicable Timetable</b> <sup>73rd</sup>	means, in respect of a day, that part of the Working Timetable which is required to be drawn up in accordance with Condition D2.1.1 <sup>85th</sup> as at 2200 hours on the day prior to the day, and which is applicable to the services
<b>“Amersham”</b>	means the boundary between the Network and the network operated by LUL at Mantles Wood, Amersham at mileage 25 miles and 21 chains to Aylesbury (via Great Missenden) the corresponding LUL measuring point being 86.925 kilometres;
<b>Base Access Rights</b> <sup>85th</sup>	means those rights approved in the 78 <sup>th</sup> Supplemental Track Access Agreement
<b>Cancellation</b> <sup>73rd</sup>	means a service operated by a train operator that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) - is cancelled;</li> <li>(b) - fails to complete at least 50 per cent of its scheduled mileage; or</li> <li>(c) is omitted from the Applicable Timetable or included in it in a modified form that does not enable the train operator to operate more than 50 per cent of such service's scheduled mileage (including calling at all timetabled stations),</li> </ul> in each case for reasons attributed to that train operator pursuant to its track access contract
<b>“Calling Pattern”</b>	means a list of stations related to one or more Passenger Train Slots, at which stops are to be Scheduled in the Working Timetable;
<b>Chiltern Services</b> <sup>73rd</sup>	Means all of the Services operated by the Train Operator referred to in this Schedule 5
<b>“Clockface Departures”</b>	means, in respect of any Service, a pattern whereby departures from the point of origin of that Service, or any specified intermediate point, are fixed at the same number or numbers of minutes past each hour;
<b>“Contingent Right”</b>	means a right under this Schedule 5 which is not a Firm Right and which is subject to the fulfilment of all competing Exercised <sup>MOD A</sup> Firm Rights and any additional contingency specified in this Schedule 5;
<b>“Day”</b>	means any period of 24 hours beginning at 0200 hours and ending immediately before the next succeeding 0200 hours, and any reference in this Schedule to any named day of the week shall be to such period commencing on that named day;
<b>“Exercised”</b> <sup>MOD A</sup>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code

**EG3 Phase 1  
Capacity  
Criteria<sup>73rd</sup>**

means, in respect of the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Matters, the identification of the number and nature of rights which are compliant with the Timetable Planning Rules<sup>85th</sup> and that can be accommodated as part of the Working Timetable to provide the maximum number of rights, consistent with:

- (a) the -rights relating to the relevant Routes set out in other operators' track access agreements on the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable;
- (b) there being no deterioration in the performance standards as a direct result of the EG3 Project when compared to the historic levels of performance on the relevant Routes in the 13 Periods prior to the Commencement Date;
- (c) maintaining, renewing and carrying out other necessary work on or in relation to the Network;
- (d) the reservation of capacity equivalent to that available on the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable to other operators whose businesses require short term flexibility; and
- (e) any safety authorisation,

and no greater than the numbers and characteristics of the EG3 Rights Phase 1

**EG3 Phase 1  
Capacity  
Matters<sup>73rd</sup>**

means:

- (a) whether, and if so to what extent, the capacity to allow EG3 Rights Phase 1 to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has been created; and
- (b) if the capacity of the Network allows less than the EG3 Rights Phase 1 to be operated, which of those rights should be surrendered to reflect that fact provided that in no circumstances may the net effect of surrendering such rights be that the Train Operator has rights which are less than the Base Access Rights in respect of Service Groups HO01, HO02 and HO03

**EG3 Phase 1  
Related  
Deterioration<sup>73rd</sup>**

means any deterioration of the MAA PPM for Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 15.1(f) of this Schedule 5)

**EG3 Phase 1  
Revised  
Recorded  
Delay<sup>73rd</sup>**

has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 15.1(g)(i)(A)6b)

**EG3 Phase 1  
Service  
Implementation  
Date<sup>73rd</sup>**

means the first day of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period -

**EG3 Phase 1 Services<sup>73rd</sup>**

means the rights listed in Service Groups HO01, HO02 and HO03 relating to rights between Birmingham and London Marylebone

**EG3 Rights Phase 1**

means the process referred to in paragraphs 15.2(b) - (f)

**Adjustment Process<sup>73rd</sup>****EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria<sup>73rd</sup>**

means, in respect of the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Matters, the identification of the number and nature of rights which are compliant with the Timetable Planning Rules<sup>85th</sup> and that can be accommodated as part of the Working Timetable to provide the maximum number of rights, consistent with:

- (a) the -rights relating to the relevant Routes set out in other operators' track access agreements on the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable;
- (b) -there being no deterioration in the performance standards as a direct result of the EG3 Project when compared to the historic levels of performance on the relevant Routes in the 13 Periods prior to the Commencement Date;
- (c) -maintaining, renewing and carrying out other necessary work on or in relation to the Network;
- (d) -the reservation of capacity equivalent to that available on the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable to other operators whose businesses require short term flexibility; and
- (e) - any safety authorisation,

and no greater than the numbers and characteristics of the EG3 Rights Phase 2

**EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Matters<sup>73rd</sup>**

means:

- (a) whether, and if so to what extent, the capacity to allow EG3 Rights Phase 2 to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has been created; and
- (b) if the capacity of the Network allows less than the EG3 Rights Phase 2 to be operated, which of those rights should be surrendered to reflect that fact provided that in no circumstances may the net effect of surrendering such rights be that the Train Operator has rights which are less than the Base Access Rights in respect of Service Groups HO01, HO02, HO03 and HO04

**EG3 Phase 2 Related Deterioration<sup>73rd</sup>**

means any deterioration of the MAA PPM for Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 16.1(f) of this Schedule 5)

**EG3 Phase 2 Revised**

has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 16.1(g)(i)(A)6)b)

<b>Recorded Delay<sup>73rd</sup></b>	
<b>EG3 Phase 2 Service Implementation Date<sup>73rd</sup></b>	Means the first day of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period
<b>EG3 Phase 2 Services<sup>73rd</sup></b>	Means the rights listed in Service Group HO04 relating to rights between Bicester South Junction and Oxford
<b>EG3 Rights Phase 2 Adjustment Process<sup>73rd</sup></b>	Means the process referred to in paragraphs 16.2 (b) – (f)
<b>“Firm Right”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;
<b>“Harrow”</b>	means the boundary between the Network and the network operated by LUL at South Junction, Harrow on the Hill mileage 197 miles 05 chains the corresponding LUL measuring point being 61.237 kilometres;
<b>“Journey Time”</b>	Means the time in the Working timetable to be taken by a Service in travelling between the specified departure point and specified destination for that Service;
<b>“Journey Time Review Notice”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.5;
<b>Long Term Performance Plan<sup>73rd</sup></b>	means the long term performance plan agreed between Network Rail and the Train Operator issued on 25 March 2009
<b>MAA PPM<sup>73rd</sup></b>	means the moving annual average of the PPM for a train operator calculated by aggregating the number of trains which arrive punctually ("punctually" being as defined in the definition of PPM) and dividing by the number of trains planned for that train operator for each of the last 13 Periods
<b>“Maximum Journey Time”</b>	means, in respect of a Passenger Train Slot, the corresponding Journey Time, if any, set out in column 4 of Table 6.1;
<b>“Maximum Key Journey Time”</b>	means, in respect of a Passenger Train Slot, the corresponding Maximum Key Journey Time, if any, set out in column 4 of Table 6.1;
<b>“Metropolitan Line”</b>	means that part of LUL’s network situated between Harrow and Amersham comprising part of the Metropolitan Line;
<b>Minutes Delay<sup>73rd</sup></b>	has, in relation to a Train Service, the meaning ascribed to it in the track access contract by which the train operator operating that Train Service is granted permission to use the relevant parts of the Network



<b>“Modification Notice”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.10;
<b>“MS Asset Capability Criteria”</b>	<p>means, in respect of the MS Asset Capability Matters, the identification of the number and nature of rights which are compliant with the Timetable Planning Rules<sup>85th</sup> and that can be accommodated as part of the Working Timetable to provide the maximum number of rights, consistent with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the rights relating to the relevant Routes set out in other operators’ track access agreements on the Principal Change Date 2009; and</li> <li>(b) any safety authorisation; and</li> <li>(c) maintaining, renewing and carrying out other necessary work on or in relation to the Network</li> </ul> <p>and no greater than the numbers and characteristics of the MS Rights;</p>
<b>“MS Asset Capability Matters”</b>	<p>means</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) - whether, and if so to what extent, the capacity to allow the whole of the MS Rights to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has been created; and</li> <li>(b) - if the capacity of the MS Enhanced Assets allows less than the whole of the MS Rights to be operated, which MS Rights should be surrendered to reflect that fact;</li> </ul>
<b>“MS Asset Proving Period”</b>	means the 7 day period commencing on the Post MS Acceptance Timetable Change Date;
<b>“MS Rights”</b>	means those rights shown in the tables and ancillary footnotes attached;
<b>“MS Rights Effective Date”</b>	<p>means:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) - if in Network Rail's reasonable opinion the Principal Change Date in any year is the most likely date for the Post MS Acceptance Timetable Change Date, the Priority Date in that year; or</li> <li>(b) - if in Network Rail's reasonable opinion the Subsidiary Change Date in any year is the most likely date for the Post MS Acceptance Timetable Change Date, the Priority Date in the preceding year; and</li> </ul>
<b>“Post MS Acceptance Timetable Change Date”</b>	means the first to occur of the Principal Change Date or the Subsidiary Change Date (as those terms are defined in Part D of the Network Code) immediately following MS Acceptance.
<b>National Rail Franchise Terms<sup>73rd</sup></b>	means the third edition of the document of that name (as may be amended from time to time)
<b>“Network</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Part G of the Network Code;

**Change”****Off-Peak Services”**

means Services Scheduled on any part of a Weekday which are not “Peak Services”, and “Off-Peak” shall be construed accordingly;

**Other Services<sup>126th</sup>**

means each and any of the following Services:

- (a) -the services in the Service Group EJ01 provided by London & Birmingham Railway Limited; and
- (b) -the services in the sub groups 1.13(a) and 1.13(b) and 1.44(a) and 1.44(b) of the Service Group EH01 provided by XC Trains Limited; and
- (c) - the services in the Train Service Code 25392003 of the Service Group EF03 and Train Service Codes 25506005 and 25507005 of the Service Group EF05 and Train Service Codes 25513005 and 25514005 and 25524005 of the Service Group EF07 provided by First Greater Western Limited;

**“Passenger Train Slot”**

means a Train Slot intended by the Train Operator to be used for the provision of a Service;

**Peak Services”**

means Services Scheduled on any part of a Weekday (i) to arrive at London Marylebone between 0700 hours and 0959 hours or (ii) to depart from London Marylebone between 1600 hours and 1859 hours, and “Peak” shall be construed accordingly;

**Period<sup>73rd</sup>**

means each consecutive period of 28 days commencing at 0000 hours on 1 April in each year, provided that the length of the first and last such Period in any year may be varied by up to 7 days on reasonable prior notice from Network Rail to the Train Operator

**PPM<sup>73rd</sup>**

means the proportion (expressed as a percentage) of the total number of services which are scheduled to be operated by a train operator in the Applicable Timetable and which arrive punctually at their final scheduled destination as specified in that Applicable Timetable and:

- (a) - for this purpose "punctually" means within 4 minutes and 59 seconds of the scheduled arrival time for the relevant service; and
- (b) - any service operated by the train operator which is a Cancellation shall be regarded as not arriving punctually or which is not a Cancellation but where the entire planned service is nonetheless not run

**Primary Delay<sup>73rd</sup>**

means the delay measured in Minutes Delay suffered by a Train Service which is directly caused by the occurrence of an initial incident or unplanned event either at the same or adjacent location and/or occurring in the same or adjacent TRUST section and at the time the incident is live and is not caused by interaction with one or more late running Train Services and is not attributed as

	Reactionary Delay in accordance with the Delay Attribution Guide
<b>“Public Holiday”</b>	means any day other than Saturday or Sunday on which the banks in the City of London are not open for business;
<b>Reactionary Delay<sup>73rd</sup></b>	means the delay measured in Minutes Delay: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) - suffered by a Train Service as a consequence of interaction with a late running Train Service; or</li> <li>(b) - suffered by a late running Train Service as a consequence of interaction with a Train Service due to its own late running, and is attributed to the delay code category "Y" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Guide</li> </ul>
<b>“Reduced Regular Calling Pattern”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 4.1; -
<b>“Regular Calling Pattern”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 4.1; -
<b>“Scheduled”</b>	means, in relation to the quantum, timing or any other characteristic of a train movement, that quantum, timing or other characteristic as included in the applicable Working Timetable;
<b>“Service Group”</b>	means any one or more (as the context may require) of the service groups described in this Schedule;
<b>Sub-threshold Delay<sup>73rd</sup></b>	means any delay measured in Minutes Delay which does not exceed the minimum delay threshold set for that Train Service and referred to as 'derived delay' in the Delay Attribution Guide
<b>“Timetable Period”</b>	means the period of time between (and including) one Timetable <sup>MOD A</sup> Change Date and (but excluding) the immediately succeeding Timetable <sup>MOD A</sup> Change Date;
<b>“Timing Load”</b>	means, in relation to a Service, the timing reference code as defined from time to time in the Working Timetable;
<b>Train Service<sup>73rd</sup></b>	Means a service for the carriage of passengers or goods by railway
<b>“Train Service Code” or “TSC”</b>	means the eight character code applied in the Performance Monitoring System and used to identify Services;
<b>“Weekday”</b>	means any day (including, except for the purposes of paragraphs 6 and 7, a Public Holiday) which is not a Saturday or Sunday; and
<b>“xx20”</b>	means, as an example of this notation, 20 minutes past the hour.

- 1.2 - Unless otherwise stated, where in this Schedule a period is expressed to be between two specific times that period shall be inclusive of both such times.
- 1.3 - The Train Operator's rights under this Schedule as to numbers of Passenger Train Slots per Day are calculated by reference to departures from the Scheduled start point on the Day in question, notwithstanding that a Passenger Train Slot may not be Scheduled to arrive at its end point until the immediately succeeding Day.

## 2 Passenger Train Slots

Table 2.1 : Passenger Train Slots<sup>133rd, 136th, 137th</sup>

1						2					
Service Group HO01 - Met											
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots					
Between	And	Via	Description	TSC	Timing Load	Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak			
Aylesbury	London Marylebone	Amersham	1.1	25210004	165	38	4	5	29	27	16
Aylesbury Vale Parkway	London Marylebone	Amersham	1.2	25210004	165	45	6	6	33	40	34
Amersham	Aylesbury	Direct	1.3	25210004	165	0	0	0	0	2	0
Aylesbury Vale Parkway	Aylesbury	Direct	1.4	25210004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0

1						2					
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham											
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots					
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Timing Load	Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak			
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.1	25530004	165	8	0	0	8	0	0
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.3	25530004	165	1	1	0	0	0	0
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.4	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	13	0
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.6	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	0	11
London Marylebone	Banbury	High Wycombe	2.7	25530004	165	81	0	0	81	14	11
London Marylebone	Banbury	High Wycombe	2.8	25530004	168	1	0	1	0	0	0
Bicester North	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.9	25530004	165	2	1	0	1	0	0
Bicester North	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.48	25530004	068	1	1	0	0	0	0
London Marylebone	Bicester North	High Wycombe	2.10	25530004	165	2	0	1	1	0	1
London Marylebone	Banbury	High Wycombe	2.49	25530004	068	1	0	1	0	0	0
Birmingham Snow Hill	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.11	25530004	168	17	0	0	17	0	0
Birmingham Snow Hill	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.12	25530004	168	0	0	0	0	14	12
London Marylebone	Birmingham Snow Hill	High Wycombe	2.13	25530004	168	18	0	4	14	0	0
London Marylebone	Birmingham Snow Hill	High Wycombe	2.14	25530004	168	0	0	0	0	14	14
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.15	25530004	168	4	4	0	0	0	0
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.16	25530004	168	3	0	0	3	12	11
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.50	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	0	1
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.17	25530004	068	4	0	0	4	1	0

1						2						
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham												
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Timing Load	Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday	
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak				
London Marylebone	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.18	25530004	168	1	0	1	0	0	0	
London Marylebone	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.19	25530004	168	8	0	0	8	11	10	
London Marylebone	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.20	25530004	068	4	0	0	4	1	0	
High Wycombe	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.21	25530004	168	0	0	0	0	1	0	
High Wycombe	Banbury	Direct	2.22	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0	
Kidderminster	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.23	25530004	168	2	1	0	1	0	0	
Kidderminster	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.24	25530004	068	2	2	0	0	2	1	
Kidderminster	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.25	25530004	168	0	0	0	0	2	1	
London Marylebone	Kidderminster	High Wycombe	2.26	25530004	068	3	0	3	0	1	1	
London Marylebone	Kidderminster	High Wycombe	2.27	25530004	168	1	0	0	1	1	2	
Stourbridge Junction	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.28	25530004	068	1	1	0	0	0	0	
London Marylebone	Stourbridge Junction	High Wycombe	2.29	25530004	168	1	0	0	1	0	0	
Stratford upon Avon	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.30	25530004	165	5	0	0	5	4	4	
Stratford upon Avon	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.31	25530004	168	1	1	0	0	1	1	
London Marylebone	Stratford upon Avon	High Wycombe	2.32	25530004	165	6	0	1	5	4	5	
Stratford upon Avon	Oxford	Direct	2.33	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0	
Stratford upon Avon	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.34	25530004	165	2	0	0	2	2	1	
Leamington Spa	Stratford upon Avon	Direct	2.35	25530004	165	3	0	0	3	3	0	
Stratford upon Avon	Warwick	Direct	2.36	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0	
Birmingham Snow Hill	Banbury	Direct	2.37	25530004	165	2	0	0	2	0	0	
Oxford	Banbury	Direct	2.38	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0	

1						2					
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham											
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots					
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Timing Load	Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak			
Birmingham Moor Street	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.39	25530004	165	5	0	0	5	7	5
Leamington Spa	Birmingham Moor Street	Direct	2.40	25530004	165	5	0	0	5	6	5
Banbury	Birmingham Moor Street	Direct	2.41	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	2	0
Bicester North	Birmingham Snow Hill	Direct	2.42	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0
Birmingham Snow Hill	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.43	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0
Stratford upon Avon	Banbury	Direct	2.45	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	1	0
London Marylebone	Birmingham Snow Hill	High Wycombe	2.46	25530004	068	0	0	0	0	1	0
Birmingham Moor Street	Banbury	Direct	2.47	25530004	165	0	0	0	0	1	0
Stratford-upon-Avon	Hatton	Direct	2.51	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0
Hatton	Stratford-upon-Avon	Direct	2.52	25530004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0

Notes to Table: -

1 On Fridays only, one of these off-peak London Marylebone to Banbury services shall be extended to Leamington Spa -

1						2					
Service Group HO03 - Joint											
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots					
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Timing Load	Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak			
Aylesbury	Princes Risborough	Direct	3.1	25211004	165	22	0	0	22	19	15
Princes Risborough	Aylesbury	Direct	3.2	25211004	165	24	0	0	24	19	17
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	3.3	25211004	168	1	1	0	0	0	0
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	3.4	25211004	165	18	4	0	14	0	0
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	3.5	25211004	165	0	0	0	0	18	14
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.6	25211004	165	3	0	3	0	0	0
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.7	25211004	165	17	0	0	17	0	0
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.8	25211004	165	0	0	0	0	19	17
High Wycombe	London Marylebone	Direct	3.9	25211004	165	23	6	0	17	1	0
London Marylebone	High Wycombe	Direct	3.10	25211004	165	24	0	5	19	0	0
Gerrards Cross	London Marylebone	Direct	3.12	25211004	165	13	2	0	11	0	0
Gerrards Cross	London Marylebone	Direct	3.13	25211004	165	0	0	0	0	14	13
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.14	25211004	165	3	0	3	0	0	0
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.15	25211004	165	11	0	0	11	0	0
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.16	25211004	165	0	0	0	0	15	13
West Ruislip	London Marylebone	Direct	3.17	25211004	165	4	2	0	2	0	0
London Marylebone	West Ruislip	Direct	3.18	25211004	165	4	0	3	1	0	0
West Ealing	High Wycombe	Direct	3.19	25211004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0
South Ruislip	West Ealing	Direct	3.20	25211004	165	1	0	0	1	0	0



1						2					
Service Group HO04 - Oxford											
Service Description						Passenger Train Slots					
From	To	Via	Description	TSC		Total Weekday	Peak times		Off Peak Times	Saturday	Sunday
							Morning Peak	Evening Peak			
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.1	25535004	168	11	1	0	10	14	12
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.2	25535004	068	1	1	0	0	0	0
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.3	25535004	168	193	3	0	164	16	18
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.4	25535004	165	4	2	0	2	3	0
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.5	25535004	168	141	0	3	112	18	15
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.6	25535004	165	7	0	0	7	2	1
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.7	25535004	168	12	0	2	10	15	14
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.8	25535004	068	1	0	1	0	0	0
Bicester Village	Oxford	Direct	4.9	25535004	165	2	0	0	2	0	2
Haddenham & Thame Parkway	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.10	25535004	168	1	0	0	1	0	0
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.11	25535004	165	2	2	0	0	0	0
Oxford	High Wycombe	Direct	4.12	25535004	168	1	0	0	1	0	0
London Marylebone	Haddenham & Thame Parkway	High Wycombe	4.13	25535004	168	2	0	0	2	0	0
Oxford	Bicester Village	Direct	4.14	25535004	168	0	0	0	0	1	1
High Wycombe	London Marylebone	Direct	4.15	25535004	168	1	0	0	1	0	0
London Marylebone	High Wycombe	Direct	4.16	25535004	168	1	0	1	0	0	0

- 1 The Operator shall be entitled to operate 16 train slots on Fridays only  
2 The Operator shall be entitled to operate 13 train slots on Fridays only  
3 The Operator shall be entitled to operate 21 train slots on Fridays only  
4 The Operator shall be entitled to operate 18 train slots on Fridays only

2.1 - The Train Operator has Firm Rights to the number of Passenger Train Slots in the Working Timetable in respect of a Service Group as listed against each Service specified in Table 2.1 on the Days and within the Peak and Off-Peak times so listed using any Specified Equipment included in paragraph 5.1.(a) that is capable of achieving the Timing Load shown. If the Train Operator makes an Access Proposal, or relies on a Rolled Over Access Proposal, to operate any of the Services specified in Table 2.1 using Specified Equipment that is not capable of achieving the Timing Load shown, then the rights will be treated as Contingent Rights for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code.

2.2 - In order to provide for the Scheduling of part only of Passenger Train Slots specified in Table 2.1 the Train Operator has:

(a) - Firm Rights for such a Passenger Train Slot to commence or terminate at Birmingham Moor Street; and

(b) - Contingent Rights for;

(i) any Service to commence from or terminate at Bicester North;

(ii) any Service to commence from or terminate at Princes Risborough;

(iii) any Service to commence from or terminate at High Wycombe; and

(iv) any Service to commence from or terminate at Gerrards Cross;

provided that any such Service is to terminate at or commence from London Marylebone or London Paddington.

2.3 - In order to provide through Services the Train Operator has:

(a) Not used; and

(b) Not used.

Table 2.2: Additional Passenger Train Slot<sup>124th, 136th, 137th</sup>

1					2		
Service Group HO04 - Oxford							
Service description					Additional Passenger Train Slots		
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Weekday	Saturday	Sunday
Oxford	Haddenham & Thame Parkway	Direct	4.17	25535004	1	0	0
Oxford	Princes Risborough	Direct	4.18	25535004	2	0	0
Haddenham & Thame Parkway	Oxford	Direct	4.19	25535004	2	0	0
Oxford	High Wycombe	Direct	4.20	25535004	1	0	0
High Wycombe	Oxford	Direct	4.21	25535004	1	0	0

1					2		
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham							
Service description					Additional Passenger Train Slots		
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Weekday	Saturday	Sunday
Bicester North	Banbury	Direct	2.53	25530004	0	0	1

1					2		
Service Group HO03 - Joint							
Service description					Additional Passenger Train Slots		
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Weekday	Saturday	Sunday
Princes Risborough	Aylesbury	Direct	3.21	25211004	0	1	1

### *Additional Passenger Train Slots*

- 2.4 - The Train Operator has Contingent Rights to additional Passenger Train Slots in the Working Timetable in respect of a Service Group up to the number listed against each Service specified in Table 2.2 and on the Days so listed.
- 2.5 - A Contingent Right for an additional Passenger Train Slot under paragraph 2.4 includes:
- (a) - a Contingent right to call at any station listed in Table 4.1;
  - (b) - a Contingent Right to have Scheduled part only of the Passenger Train Slot in question; and
  - (c) - a Contingent Right to combine Passenger Train Slots to provide a through Service.

### *Ancillary Movements*

- 2.6 - The Train Operator has Firm Rights to make Ancillary Movements of Specified Equipment to the extent necessary or reasonably required to give full effect to the other Firm Rights of the Train Operator, including:
- (a) - movements for the purpose of maintenance of rolling stock to and from the maintenance depots;
  - (b) - movements for driver training purposes; and
  - (c) - empty stock movements.
- 2.7 - For the purpose of paragraph 2.6, Ancillary Movements shall not include movements of rolling stock for the purpose of testing or driver training to the extent that:
- (a) - the rolling stock concerned has not achieved vehicle and route acceptance necessary for its use in the carriage of passengers on the Route in question; or
  - (b) - where the Route in question is not used by the Train Operator for carriage of passengers, the rolling stock concerned has not achieved vehicle and route acceptance necessary to operate on the Route without passengers on board.

### *Relief Passenger Train Slots*

- 2.8 - The Train Operator has Contingent Rights to relief Passenger Trains Slots for special or seasonal events, whenever the Train Operator believes (acting in a reasonable and proper manner) that a relief Passenger Train Slot is necessary to accommodate anticipated customer demand. These Contingent Rights are subject to:
- (a) - the relief Passenger Train Slot being additional to a Service for which the Train Operator has access rights in Table 2.1 or 2.2; and
  - (b) - each relief Passenger Train Slot shall be allocated the relevant Train Service Code as shown in Schedule 7, Appendix 7C.

- 2.9 - Save by prior agreement with Network Rail, the Train Operator shall not be entitled to operate Services on 25 and 26 December in any year. Any prior agreement shall be subject to such conditions as Network Rail may reasonably impose, including paying for Network Rail's reasonable costs for providing such access.
- 2.10 - Subject to paragraph 2.8, Public Holidays Shall be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as Saturdays
- 2.11 - The exercise of a Stabling right shall not count against the number of Passenger Train Slots listed in Table 2.1.
- 2.12 - LUL imposed changes  
Network Rail shall exercise its Flexing Rights to accommodate any short term alterations which may be imposed on the Services due to unscheduled changes to operations over LUL so far as it is reasonably practicable for it to do so having due regard to the Decision Criteria.

### **3 Service Intervals**

Table 3.1: Not used -

Table 3.1a: Not used -

Table 3.1b: Not used -

Paragraph 3.1 Not used; -

Paragraph 3.2 Not used; -

Paragraph 3.3: Not used; -

Paragraph 3.4: Not used -

#### 4 Calling Patterns

Table 4.1: Calling Patterns<sup>133rd, 136th, 137th</sup>

1						2	3
Service Group HO01 - Met							
Service description							
Between		And	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional stations
Aylesbury Parkway	Vale	London Marylebone	Amersham	1.2	25210004	Aylesbury Stoke Wendover Great Missenden Mandeville	N/A
Aylesbury		London Marylebone	Amersham	1.1 & 1.3	25210004	Stoke Wendover Great Missenden Mandeville	N/A
Aylesbury Parkway	Vale	Aylesbury	Direct	1.4	25210004	N/A	N/A

1					2	3
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.1	25530004	Bicester North, Haddenham & Thame Parkway (up to 5 calls), Princes Risborough, High Wycombe	Kings Sutton, Saunderton, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross, Denham Golf Club, Denham, South Ruislip, Wembley Stadium
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.3	25530004	Bicester North, High Wycombe	Kings Sutton, Wembley Stadium
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.4	25530004	Bicester North, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough (up to 12 calls), High Wycombe	Kings Sutton, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross, Wembley Stadium, Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt
Banbury	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.6	25530004	Bicester North, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross	Kings Sutton, Saunderton, Seer Green & Jordans, Denham Golf Club, Denham, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Wembley Stadium
London Marylebone	Banbury	High Wycombe	2.7, 2.8 and 2.49	25530004	Gerrards Cross (up to 9 calls weekdays), Beaconsfield, High Wycombe, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North	Wembley Stadium, Sudbury Hill Harrow, Northolt Park, South Ruislip, West Ruislip, Denham, Denham Golf Club, Seer Green & Jordans, Saunderton, Kings Sutton
Bicester North	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.9 & 2.48	25530004	Haddenham & Thame Parkway, High Wycombe	Princes Risborough, Saunderton, Beaconsfield, Seer Green & Jordans, Gerrards Cross
London Marylebone	Bicester North	High Wycombe	2.10	25530004	High Wycombe, Princes Risborough	Wembley Stadium, Denham, Gerrards Cross, Seer Green & Jordans, Beaconsfield, Saunderton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Denham Golf Club
Birmingham Snow Hill	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.11	25530004	Birmingham Moor Street, Solihull, Dorridge, Warwick Parkway, Warwick (up to 15 calls), Leamington Spa, Banbury, Bicester North (up to 16 calls)	Widney Manor, Lapworth, Hatton, Kings Sutton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, Saunderton, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross
Birmingham Snow Hill	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.12	25530004	Birmingham Moor Street, Solihull, Dorridge, Warwick Parkway, Warwick (up to 14 calls on Saturday), Leamington Spa, Banbury, Bicester North	Widney Manor, Lapworth, Hatton, Kings Sutton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, Saunderton, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Seer Green & Jordans, Gerrards Cross, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Wembley Stadium
London Marylebone	Birmingham Snow Hill	High Wycombe	2.13	25530004	Bicester North (up to 16 calls), Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick (up to 16 calls), Warwick Parkway, Dorridge (up to 15 calls), Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street	Denham, Gerrards Cross, Seer Green & Jordans, Beaconsfield, High Wycombe, Saunderton, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Kings Sutton, Hatton, Lapworth, Widney Manor, Olton
London Marylebone	Birmingham Snow Hill	High Wycombe	2.14 & 2.46	25530004	Bicester North (up to 12 calls on Sunday), Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick Parkway, Dorridge, Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street	Gerrards Cross, Beaconsfield, High Wycombe, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Kings Sutton, Warwick, Hatton, Lapworth, Widney Manor

1					2	3
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.15	25530004	Solihull, Dorridge (up to 3 calls), Warwick Parkway, Leamington Spa, Banbury, Bicester North	Warwick, Kings Sutton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, High Wycombe
Birmingham Moor Street	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.16, 2.17 & 2.50	25530004	Solihull, Warwick Parkway, Leamington Spa, Banbury, High Wycombe	Widney Manor, Dorridge, Lapworth, Hatton, Warwick, Bicester North, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross, West Ruislip
London Marylebone	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.18	25530004	Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North, Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick, Warwick Parkway, Dorridge, Solihull	N/A
London Marylebone	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.19 & 2.20	25530004	High Wycombe (up to 8 calls Weekdays), Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick Parkway, Solihull	Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North, Warwick, Hatton, Lapworth, Dorridge, Widney Manor
High Wycombe	Birmingham Moor Street	High Wycombe	2.21	25530004	N/A	Saunderton, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North, Kings Sutton, Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick, Warwick Parkway, Hatton, Dorridge, Solihull
High Wycombe	Banbury	Direct	2.22	25530004	N/A	Saunderton, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North
Kidderminster	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.23 & 2.24	25530004	Stourbridge Junction, Birmingham Snow Hill, Birmingham Moor Street, Solihull, Warwick Parkway, Leamington Spa	Blakedown, Hagley, Cradley Heath, Rowley Regis, Smethwick Galton Bridge, The Hawthorns, Jewellery Quarter, Dorridge, Warwick, Banbury, Bicester North, High Wycombe
Kidderminster	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.25	25530004	Stourbridge Junction, Birmingham Snow Hill, Birmingham Moor Street, Solihull, Warwick Parkway, Leamington Spa	Cradley Heath, Rowley Regis, Smethwick Galton Bridge, The Hawthorns, Dorridge, Warwick, Bicester North, Princes Risborough, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Banbury
London Marylebone	Kidderminster	High Wycombe	2.26 & 2.27	25530004	Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick Parkway, Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street, Birmingham Snow Hill, Stourbridge Junction	West Ruislip, Beaconsfield, High Wycombe, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester North, Warwick, Hatton, Lapworth, Dorridge, Widney Manor, The Hawthorns, Smethwick Galton Bridge, Rowley Regis, Cradley Heath
Stourbridge Junction	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.28	25530004	Birmingham Snow Hill, Birmingham Moor Street, Solihull, Dorridge, Warwick Parkway, Leamington Spa, Banbury	Rowley Regis, Smethwick Galton Bridge



1					2	3
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
London Marylebone	Stourbridge Junction	High Wycombe	2.29	25530004	N/A	High Wycombe, Bicester North, Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick Parkway, Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street, Birmingham Snow Hill, Jewellery Quarter, The Hawthorns, Smethwick Galton Bridge, Langley Green, Rowley Regis, Old Hill, Cradley Heath, Lye
Stratford-upon-Avon	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	2.30 & 2.31	25530004	Wilmcote, Hatton, Warwick, Leamington Spa, Banbury, Bicester North	Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway, Bearley, Claverdon Warwick Parkway, Kings Sutton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, Saunderton, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Seer Green & Jordans, Gerrards Cross, West Ruislip, Wembley Stadium
London Marylebone	Stratford-upon-Avon	High Wycombe	2.32	25530004	High Wycombe, Princes Risborough, Bicester North, Banbury, Leamington Spa, Hatton, Wilmcote	Wembley Stadium, Northolt Park, West Ruislip, Denham, Denham Golf Club, Gerrards Cross, Seer Green & Jordans, Beaconsfield, Saunderton, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Kings Sutton, Warwick, Warwick Parkway, Claverdon, Bearley, Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway
Stratford-upon-Avon	Oxford	Direct	2.33	25530004	N/A	Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway, Warwick, Leamington Spa, Banbury
Stratford-upon-Avon	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.34	25530004	Wilmcote, Hatton, Warwick	Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway, Bearley, Claverdon,
Leamington Spa	Stratford-upon-Avon	Direct	2.35	25530004	Warwick, Hatton, Wilmcote	Claverdon, Bearley, Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway
Stratford-upon-Avon	Warwick	Direct	2.36	25530004	N/A	Stratford-upon-Avon Parkway, Wilmcote, Bearley, Claverdon
Birmingham Snow Hill	Banbury	Direct	2.37	25530004	Birmingham Moor Street, Tyseley, Acocks Green, Olton, Solihull, Widney Manor, Dorridge, Lapworth, Hatton, Warwick Parkway, Warwick, Leamington Spa	N/A
Oxford	Banbury	Direct	2.38	25530004	N/A	Tackley, Heyford, Kings Sutton
Birmingham Moor Street	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.39	25530004	Solihull, Dorridge, Lapworth, Hatton, Warwick	N/A
Leamington Spa	Birmingham Moor Street	Direct	2.40	25530004	Warwick, Hatton, Lapworth, Dorridge, Solihull	Widney Manor
Banbury	Birmingham Moor Street	Direct	2.41	25530004	Leamington Spa, Warwick, Warwick Parkway, Dorridge, Solihull	Hatton, Lapworth

1					2	3
Service Group HO02 - Birmingham						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
Bicester North	Birmingham Snow Hill	Direct	2.42	25530004	N/A	Banbury, Leamington Spa, Warwick, Warwick Parkway, Dorridge, Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street
Birmingham Snow Hill	Leamington Spa	Direct	2.43	25530004	N/A	Birmingham Moor St, Acocks Green, Olton, Solihull, Widney Manor, Dorridge, Lapworth, Hatton, Warwick
Leamington Spa	Birmingham Snow Hill	Direct	2.44	25530004	N/A	Warwick, Hatton, Lapworth, Dorridge, Solihull, Birmingham Moor Street
Stratford-upon-Avon	Banbury	Direct	2.45	25530004	N/A	Warwick, Leamington Spa
Birmingham Moor Street	Banbury	Direct	2.47	25530004	Solihull, Warwick Parkway, Warwick, Leamington Spa	Widney Manor, Dorridge, Lapworth, Hatton
135th Stratford-upon-Avon	Hatton	Direct	2.51	25530004	N/A	N/A
Hatton	Stratford-upon-Avon	Direct	2.52	25530004	N/A	Claverdon, Bearley, Wilmcote, Stratford Parkway

1					2	3
Service Group HO03 - Joint						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
Aylesbury	Princes Risborough	Direct	3.1	25211004	Monks Risborough	Little Kimble
Princes Risborough	Aylesbury	Direct	3.2	25211004	Monks Risborough	Little Kimble
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	3.3 & 3.4	25211004	Saunderton (up to 12 calls), High Wycombe, Beaconsfield (up to 6 calls), Seer Green & Jordans (up to 12 calls), Gerrards Cross (up to 16 calls)	Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Sudbury Hill Harrow, Sudbury & Harrow Road, Wembley Stadium
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	3.5	25211004	Saunderton (0 calls on Sunday), High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross, Wembley Stadium (up to 3 calls on Saturday, 0 calls on Sunday)	Seer Green & Jordans, Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt Park
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.6	25211004	West Ruislip, Denham, Gerrards Cross, Seer Green & Jordans, Beaconsfield, High Wycombe	Denham Golf Club
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.7	25211004	Gerrards Cross, Seer Green & Jordans (up to 9 calls), Beaconsfield, High Wycombe	Wembley Stadium, Northolt Park, South Ruislip, West Ruislip, Denham, Denham Golf Club, Saunderton
London Marylebone	Princes Risborough	High Wycombe	3.8	25211004	Wembley Stadium, Denham (up to 18 calls on Saturday and up to 4 calls on Sunday), Gerrards Cross, Beaconsfield, High Wycombe, Saunderton	Northolt Park, South Ruislip, West Ruislip, Denham Golf Club, Seer Green & Jordans
High Wycombe	London Marylebone	Direct	3.9	25211004	Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross, Wembley Stadium (up to 17 calls on Weekdays)	Seer Green & Jordans, Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Sudbury Hill Harrow
London Marylebone	High Wycombe	Direct	3.10	25211004	Wembley Stadium (up to 14 calls Weekdays), Denham (up to 9 calls Weekdays), Gerrards Cross, Beaconsfield	Sudbury Hill Harrow, Northolt Park, South Ruislip, West Ruislip, Denham Golf Club, Seer Green & Jordans
Gerrards Cross	London Marylebone	Direct	3.12	25211004	Northolt Park	Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Sudbury Hill Harrow, Sudbury and Harrow Road, Wembley Stadium
Gerrards Cross	London Marylebone	Direct	3.13	25211004	Denham, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Wembley Stadium	Denham Golf Club, West Ruislip
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.14	25211004	Sudbury Hill Harrow, Northolt Park	Wembley Stadium, South Ruislip, Denham Golf Club
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.15	25211004	Wembley Stadium, Northolt Park, Denham (up to 8 calls)	Sudbury & Harrow Road, Sudbury Hill Harrow, South Ruislip, West Ruislip, Denham Golf Club

1					2	3
Service Group HO03 - Joint						
Service Description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional Stations
London Marylebone	Gerrards Cross	Direct	3.16	25211004	Wembley Stadium, Northolt Park, South Ruislip, Denham	West Ruislip, Denham Golf Club
West Ruislip	London Marylebone	Direct	3.17	25211004	N/A	South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Sudbury Hill Harrow, Sudbury & Harrow Road, Wembley Stadium
London Marylebone	West Ruislip	Direct	3.18	25211004	Wembley Stadium	Sudbury & Harrow Road, Sudbury Hill Harrow, Northolt Park, South Ruislip
West Ealing	High Wycombe	Direct	3.19	25211004	N/A	N/A
South Ruislip	West Ealing	Direct	3.20	25211004	N/A	N/A

1					2	3
Service Group HO04 - Oxford						
Service description						
From	To	Via	Description	TSC	Regular Calling Pattern	Additional stations
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.1 & 4.2	25535004	Oxford Parkway, Bicester Village	Islip, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, High Wycombe, Denham
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.3 & 4.4	25535004	Oxford Parkway, Bicester Village, Haddenham & Thame Parkway (up to 18 calls on Weekdays), High Wycombe (up to 16 calls on Sunday)	Islip, Princes Risborough, Saunderton, Beaconsfield, Seer Green & Jordans, Gerrards Cross, Denham Golf Club, Denham, West Ruislip, South Ruislip, Northolt Park, Wembley Stadium
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.5 & 4.6	25535004	High Wycombe, Bicester Village, Oxford Parkway	Wembley Stadium, Gerrards Cross, Beaconsfield, Princes Risborough, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Islip
London Marylebone	Oxford	High Wycombe	4.7 & 4.8	25535004	Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Bicester Village, Oxford Parkway	Islip
Bicester Village	Oxford	Direct	4.9	25535004	Oxford Parkway	Islip
Haddenham & Thame Parkway	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.10	25535004	N/A	Princes Risborough, High Wycombe, Beaconsfield, Gerrards Cross
Princes Risborough	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.11	25535004	High Wycombe	Saunderton, Beaconsfield, Seer Green & Jordans, Gerrards Cross, Denham Golf Club, West Ruislip
Oxford	High Wycombe	Direct	4.12	25535004	N/A	Oxford Parkway, Bicester Village, Haddenham & Thame Parkway, Princes Risborough, Saunderton
London Marylebone	Haddenham & Thame Parkway	High Wycombe	4.13	25535004	High Wycombe	Princes Risborough
Oxford	Bicester Village	Direct	4.14	25535004	N/A	Oxford Parkway
High Wycombe	London Marylebone	Direct	4.15	25535004	N/A	South Ruislip, Wembley Stadium, Gerrards Cross, Denham

*Calling Patterns*

- 4.1 - In respect of each Service specified in column 1 of Table 4.1, the Train Operator has Firm Rights to the corresponding Calling Pattern listed in column 2 of that Table (the “Regular Calling Pattern”) or any subset of the Calling Pattern (the “Reduced Regular Calling Pattern”).

*Additional calls*

- 4.2 - The Train Operator has Contingent Rights to have Scheduled, in respect of any Passenger Train Slot, calls at one or more of the stations set out opposite the Service in column 3 of Table 4.1 being stations which do not form part of the Regular Calling Pattern.

**5 Specified Equipment***Specified Equipment*

- 5.1 - <sup>123rd</sup>In order to provide the Services Specified in this Schedule 5 the Train Operator has:

- (a) - Firm Rights to operate the following railway vehicles:  
 Class 165/0  
 Class 168/0, Class 168/1, Class 168/2, Class 168/3  
 Class 172  
 Class 68 plus six Mark III carriages plus Driving Van Trailer

and

- (b) - Contingent Rights to operate any railway vehicles registered with Network Rail’s rolling stock library, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the route in question.

For the purposes of this contract the railway vehicles specified in paragraph 5.1(a) and 5.1 (b) are known as the “Specified Equipment”.

*Train length*

- 5.2 - The Train Operator has a Firm Right to the maximum train length in metres which the Network can from time to time accommodate, subject to a right of Network Rail to vary the train length in cases where the Network cannot accommodate all Access Proposals and Rolled Over Access Proposals to operate to the maximum length.
- 5.3 - Nothing in paragraph 5.2 precludes the operation of trains in excess of platform lengths where appropriate measures have been taken to control, so far as is reasonably practicable, any risks introduced by the use of such longer trains.

## 6 Journey Time Protection<sup>122nd, 137th</sup>

Table 6.1: Journey Time Protection

1					2	3	4
<b>Service Group HO04 - Oxford</b>							
<b>Service description</b>							
Between	And	Via	Description	TSC	Protection Type (MJT or MKJT)	Days of the week	Journey time (in minutes)
Oxford	London Marylebone	High Wycombe	4.1, 4.2, 4.7 & 4.8	25535004	MJT	Weekday, Saturday and Sunday	70 minutes with the exception of 4 trains weekdays, 5 trains on Saturday and 5 trains on Sunday and any evening peak trains scheduled to use Platform 3 at Oxford

### *Journey Time Protection*

- 6.1 - The Train Operator has Firm Rights to Maximum Journey Times or Maximum Key Journey Times under this paragraph 6 only in relation to Passenger Train Slots which are the subject of and comply with Firm Rights under paragraph 2.1 and paragraph 4.1.
- 6.2 - In respect of each Service listed in column 1 of Table 6.1, the Train Operator has Firm Rights to a Journey Time, being a Maximum Journey Time or Maximum Key Journey Time as specified by MJT or MKJT respectively in column 2, on the days listed in column 3, not exceeding the Journey Time listed in column 4.
- 6.3 - Journey Times specified as Maximum Journey Times shall be increased or decreased (as the case may be) by an amount equal to any:
  - (a) - increase or decrease in the relevant sectional running times applicable as at the date of this contract;
  - (b) - increase or decrease in the relevant station dwell times applicable as at the date of this contract; and
  - (c) - increase or decrease in the relevant performance allowances, engineering recovery allowances or any other allowances,
 as such sectional running times, station dwell times or allowances are established and may change in accordance with the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and/or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules.
- 6.4 - Journey Times specified as Maximum Key Journey Times are not subject to changes to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules, otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 7.

## **7 Provisions applicable to Journey Time protection**

### *Restriction on changes to the Engineering Access Statement and Timetable Planning Rules*

- 7.1 - In relation to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules:
  - (a) - subject to paragraphs 7.1(b) and 7.1(c), Network Rail shall not propose or agree to any amendments to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules which would prevent it from Scheduling a Journey Time in the Working Timetable which is equal to or less than the relevant Maximum Key Journey Time specified for every Passenger Train Slot specified in Table 6.1;
  - (b) - paragraph 7.1(a) shall not apply in relation to any such amendment which is proposed by the Train Operator or effected pursuant to the order of an appeal body under Part D of the Network Code or any other competent tribunal; and
  - (c) - Network Rail shall not be in breach of paragraph 7.1(a) to the extent that the failure to Schedule any Journey Time is the result of any Network Rail Restriction of Use, Competent Authority Restriction of Use, or Operator Restriction of Use, (as these terms are defined in or for the purposes of Part 3 of Schedule 4).



*Network Change*

7.2 - If:

- (a) - in any Timetable Period, 90 per cent or more of train movements which:
  - (i) - are Scheduled in that Timetable Period; and
  - (ii) are Services to which in each case a Maximum Key Journey Time applies, exceed the applicable Scheduled Journey Time; and
- (b) - the failure of such train movements to achieve those Scheduled Journey Times is attributable to the condition or operation of the Network,

then a Network Change within the meaning of paragraph (iii) of the definition of Network Change shall be treated as having occurred and the provisions of Part G of the Network Code shall apply:

- (i) - as if such Network Change had been proposed by Network Rail; and
- (ii) - as if the revisions to Maximum Key Journey Times agreed under paragraph 7.3, or determined under paragraph 7.4, subject to any modification under paragraph 7.10, constitute the scope of the relevant Network Change,

and compensation shall be payable to the Train Operator accordingly.

*Agreement of revised Maximum Key Journey Time*

7.3 - If under paragraph 7.2 a Network Change is treated as having occurred, the parties will try to agree a revised Maximum Key Journey Time for each such Maximum Key Journey Time affected by such Network Change.

*Referral to ADRR*

7.4 - If the parties fail to agree such revised Maximum Key Journey Time(s) within 3 months of the request of either party for revision of the relevant Maximum Key Journey Time(s), either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. The parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that in performing its function the relevant ADRR Forum must have regard to the following criteria:

- (a) - Maximum Key Journey Times should be as short as is compatible with the development of a safe, reliable and robust timetable; and
- (b) - any relevant criteria which may have been published by ORR.

*Provisions applicable to Maximum Key Journey Times and Maximum Journey Times*

7.5 - A Journey Time Review Notice is a notice given to the parties by ORR:

- (a) - requiring them to enter into negotiations in good faith to vary such Journey Times set out in Table 6.1 as are specified in the notice;
- (b) - after consultation with the parties, the Secretary of State and such other persons as it considers appropriate; and
- (c) - containing its reasons for giving it.

- 7.6 - As soon as reasonably practicable after the service of a Journey Time Review Notice, the parties shall begin and in good faith diligently pursue the negotiations in question.
- 7.7 - If the parties reach agreement on the variations in question, they shall send a copy of them to ORR for its consent, together with a note of the reasons for them and an explanation of how they are consistent with its statutory duties.
- 7.8 - If the parties fail to reach agreement on the variations in question within 45 days of the giving of a Journey Time Review Notice, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. In such a case, the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum shall reach a determination that is fair and reasonable on the basis of the following criteria:
- (i) - Journey Times should be as short as is compatible with the development of a safe, reliable and robust timetable;
  - (ii) - any relevant criteria which may have been published by ORR; and
  - (iii) - the reasons for the service of the Journey Time Review Notice given by ORR in that notice.

*Requirement for Office of Rail Regulation's consent*

- 7.9 - Subject to paragraph 7.10, a variation:
- (a) - agreed under paragraph 7.3;
  - (b) - agreed or determined as an outcome of a referral for resolution in accordance with the ADRR under any of the provisions of this paragraph 7; or
  - (c) - agreed under paragraph 7.7;
- shall have effect:
- (i) - only if ORR has given its consent to it; and
  - (ii) - from such date as is specified in that consent.

*Office of Rail Regulation's Modification Notice*

- 7.10 - A Modification Notice is a notice given to the parties by ORR:
- (a) - specifying the changes which ORR requires be made to the proposed variations which have been:
    - (i) - agreed under paragraph 7.3;
    - (ii) - agreed or determined as an outcome of a referral for resolution in accordance with the ADRR under any of the provisions of this paragraph 7; or
    - (iii) - specified in an agreement of the kind referred to in paragraph 7.7;

- (b) after consultation with the parties, the Secretary of State and such other persons as it considers appropriate; and
- (c) containing its reasons for giving it.

7.11 - If a Modification Notice is given, this contract will have effect with the variations referred to in paragraph 7.10(a) as modified in accordance with the terms of the notice.

*Office of Rail Regulation's notice for substitution of date/period*

7.12 - ORR shall be entitled, by notice to the parties and the Secretary of State, to substitute for any date or period specified in paragraph 7.8, a date which is not more than 180 days later, or a period which is not more than 180 days longer, than that so specified.

*Requirements for notice under paragraph 7.12*

7.13 - No notice under paragraph 7.12 may be given unless:

- (a) - ORR has consulted the parties and the Secretary of State;
- (b) - ORR has taken into account any representations or objections which have been made to it within such period as it has specified for the purpose; and
- (c) - where the notice is given after the date or the expiry of the period to which it relates, it is given no later than 30 days after such date or expiry.

**8. Other Rights: Not Used<sup>137th</sup>**

**12. MS Rights**

12.1 - In relation to the MS Rights, where paragraphs 2 to 8 of this Schedule refer to Firm Rights, the only contingencies preventing the MS Rights from being Firm Rights are:

- (a) - the sign up and entering into the MS Asset Purchase Agreement; and
- (b) - the occurrence of MS Acceptance; and
- (c) - the outcome of the process in paragraphs 12.4 to 12.10 below.

12.2 and 12.3 not used

*12.4 - MS Asset Proving Period*

The parties agree that during the MS Asset Proving Period their joint objective shall be for them to establish the extent to which the MS Rights can be accommodated on the MS Enhanced Assets. The parties agree to exercise their rights and perform their obligations under this contract with a view to achieving that objective.

*12.5 - Establishing MS Asset Capability Matters*

- (a) - The parties shall within 10 Working Days after the end of the MS Asset Proving Period meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the MS Asset

Capability Matters, provided that no MS Rights shall be surrendered other than in accordance with paragraph 12.1.

- (b) - Each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) - such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) - the MS Asset Capability Criteria are applied in the negotiations.
- (c) - The negotiations shall not continue beyond 10 Working Days after the end of the MS Asset Proving Period.

#### 12.6 - *MS Asset Capability Matters - failure to agree*

If the parties fail to agree the MS Asset Capability Matters on or before the expiry of 10 Working Days after the end of the MS Asset Proving Period

- (a) - the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
- (b) - Network Rail shall within 5 Working Days notify ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

#### 12.7 - *Arbitration*

If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 12.6, the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:

- (a) - determine the MS Asset Capability Matters having regard to the MS Asset Capability Criteria; and
- (b) - provide reasons for his award.

#### 12.8 - *MS Asset Capability Matters – notice to ORR*

Not later than 15 Working Days from the end of the MS Asset Proving Period or 5 Working Days from the date of the arbitral award, as the case may be, the result of the process set out in paragraph 12.5 or the arbitration shall be sent by the parties to ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) - stating the reasons for the outcome in the case of agreement pursuant to paragraph 12.5 or the arbitrator's reasons for his award in the case of a determination pursuant to paragraph 12.7; and
- (b) - giving such other information as ORR may have requested.

### 12.9 *MS Asset Capability Matters – ORR’s consent*

If, having regard to the MS Asset Capability Criteria, ORR is satisfied with the MS Asset Capability Matters submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 12.8 and it gives a notice to that effect, then the provisions of paragraph 12.1 shall have effect.

### 12.10 *MS Asset Capability Matters – ORR’s refusal of consent*

If ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed MS Asset Capability Matters, it may:

- (a) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 12.5 to 12.7 for agreeing MS Asset Capability Matters (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) - following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the MS Asset Capability Matters itself, having regard to the MS Asset Capability Criteria, and give a notice specifying such MS Asset Capability Matters in which case paragraph 12.1 shall have effect.

## 13. **MS Rights Effective Date**

With effect from the MS Rights Effective Date this Schedule 5 will be supplemented by the MS Rights, subject to the sub-paragraphs set out below:

- i) If, and as soon as, in Network Rail’s reasonable opinion it is no longer reasonably certain to be the case that MS Acceptance will occur in time to allow the MS Rights to be operated on the Post MS Acceptance Timetable Change Date which was used to agree or determine the MS Rights Effective Date (the “Anticipated Timetable Change Date”) then the MS Rights shall not have effect on the Anticipated Timetable Change Date, provided that if MS Acceptance does in fact occur by a date which in Network Rail’s reasonable opinion is in time to allow the MS Rights to be operated on the Anticipated Timetable Change Date, the MS Rights shall be operated from the Anticipated Timetable Change Date.
- ii) - If MS Acceptance occurs either after the Anticipated Timetable Change Date or on a date which in Network Rail’s reasonable opinion is too late to allow the MS Rights to be operated from the Anticipated Timetable Change Date then the MS Rights shall be operated on the earliest date following MS Acceptance upon which it is possible to operate the MS Rights. For the avoidance of doubt pending operation of the MS Rights the Train Operator shall be entitled to operate in accordance with the Applicable Timetable.
- iii) - If the Anticipated Timetable Change Date is the Subsidiary Change Date in any year and MS Acceptance occurs prior to that Subsidiary Change Date but after the Principal Change Date in the previous year, the parties recognise that upon MS Acceptance the Train Operator will be entitled to make one or more Train Operator

Variation Requests<sup>85th</sup> to operate the MS Rights, which will be dealt with pursuant to Part D of the Network Code.

#### 14. - **Disputes**

If the Train Operator is dissatisfied with Network Rail's decision given in the context of the MS Rights Effective Date, or paragraph 13 of this Schedule 5 then the Train Operator may refer the matter to the Timetabling Committee for determination in accordance with Condition D5 of the Network Code as though Condition 5.1.1 of the Network Code included a reference to this paragraph 14 as a ground for making an appeal, provided that if MS Acceptance does in fact occur in time to allow the MS Rights to be operated on the Anticipated Timetable Change Date, the MS Rights shall be operated from the Anticipated Timetable Change Date."

**With effect from the EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date, the contract shall be amended as shown in the following new paragraph <sup>73rd</sup>**

#### 15. **Evergreen 3 Phase 1<sup>73rd</sup>**

##### 15.1 **EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period Principles**

###### (a) - **Proving Period Duration**

The provisions in this paragraph 15.1 and in paragraph 15.2 that relate to EG3 Phase 1 Services shall only apply for the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period.

###### (b) - **Baseline Performance Measure**

###### (i) - **The baseline PPM for the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period for the Chiltern Services (**Baseline PPM 1**) shall be either:**

###### (A) - **the lesser of:**

1) - 93.75%; and

2) - the average of the PPM for the Chiltern Services in the 26 Periods immediately prior to the first day of the EG3 Phase 1 Service Implementation Date (the **Initial PPM 1**); or

(B) - if the PPM in the Long Term Performance Plan (**LTPP**) falls to a level that triggers the formal review process as documented in the LTPP, the percentage determined in accordance with that process.

###### (ii) - **The baseline PPM for the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period for the Other Services (**OS Baseline PPM 1**) shall be the average of the PPM for each of the Other Services in the 26 Periods immediately prior to the**

first day of the EG3 Phase 1 Service Implementation Date (the **OS Initial PPM 1**).

- (iii) - Network Rail shall, within 90 days of the end of the relevant Periods, provide the Train Operator with its recorded data (which shall be collected in accordance with the Network Rail performance systems) in respect of:

(A)

- 1) - Primary Delay;
- 2) - Reactionary Delay; and
- 3) - Sub-threshold Delay,

(the **Recorded Delay**) suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in each of the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Service Implementation Date; and

- (B) - the aggregate figures for Recorded Delay in respect of the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services in the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Service Implementation Date.

(c) Performance Measurement Procedure

- (i) - During the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period, Network Rail shall collect performance data relating to the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in accordance with normal industry processes.
- (ii) - The Train Operator shall, acting reasonably, be entitled to audit the processes described in paragraph 15.1(c)(i).

(d) Reporting

- (i) - No later than 30 days after the end of each Period in the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period, Network Rail shall calculate using the performance data referred to in paragraph 15.1(c)(i) both the PPM in that Period (**Period PPM**) and the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and the Other Services and provide to the Train Operator the results of those calculations together with an explanation in reasonable detail of the methodology used by Network Rail in carrying out such calculations.

(ii) - If the Train Operator disagrees with Network Rail's calculations, produced pursuant to paragraph 15.1(d)(i), of any of the following:

- (A) - the Period PPM for the Chiltern Services;
- (B) - the Period PPM for the Other Services;
- (C) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services; and
- (D) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services,

it shall notify Network Rail in writing describing, in reasonable detail, the grounds on which it disagrees with Network Rail's calculations. Within 10 Working Days of Network Rail receiving a notice given by the Train Operator pursuant to this paragraph 15.1(d)(ii), the Train Operator and Network Rail shall meet and seek to agree the calculation that is in dispute. If the Train Operator and Network Rail cannot agree within 40 Working Days of first meeting, either party may refer the matter to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract.

(e) EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period and the Reporting of Recorded Delay

Network Rail shall within 90 days of the end of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period provide the Train Operator with:

- (i) - the data showing the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project during each of the Periods during the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period; and
- (ii) - the aggregate figures for Recorded Delay in respect of the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services during the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period.

(f) - Allocation of Performance Risk

For the purposes of this paragraph 15.1, to the extent that during the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period there is a decrease in either or both of:

- (i) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services; and
- (ii) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services,

the Train Operator shall only be deemed to be responsible for that decrease where such decrease is caused by:



- (A) - delay resulting from any action or inaction of the Train Operator or its contractors;
- (B) - delay resulting from EG3 Phase 1 failing to facilitate the delivery by the Specified Equipment of the Services set out in this Schedule 5; or
- (C) - delay resulting from the Specified Equipment failing to meet the requirements of the applicable Timetable Planning Rules<sup>85th</sup>.

(g) - Post Proving Period Assessment

- (i) - Subject to the provisions of paragraph 15.1(f), where following the expiry of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period, the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services is below the Baseline PPM 1 and/or the MAA PPM for each of the Other Services is below the OS Baseline PPM 1:

- (A) - the Train Operator and Network Rail shall cooperate and undertake an assessment of the performance attributable to EG3 Phase 1 during the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period in order to determine, with a reasonable level of certainty, the extent to which the reduction in the MAA PPM of the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services was caused by any of the matters described in paragraph 15.1(f)(A) to (C). In undertaking such assessment the parties will consider the causes of any changes to:

- 1) - Primary Delay;
- 2) - Reactionary Delay;
- 3) - the ratio of Primary Delay to Reactionary Delay; and
- 4) - Sub-threshold Delay,

relating to the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services by:

- 5) - using the Recorded Delay provided to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraphs 15.1(b)(ii) and 15.1(e); and;
- 6) - assessing:
  - a) - the average level of each element of Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and

each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Service Implementation Date and in any completed Periods following the end of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period whilst the assessment contemplated by this paragraph 15.1(g) is undertaken by the parties;

- b) - the extent to which the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project should be adjusted to reflect the expected impact (if any) of an increase in the quantum of trains operating along the Routes which had the same operating characteristics as the Services (**EG3 Phase 1 Revised Recorded Delay**); and
- B) - the Train Operator may request, to the extent possible under the Network Code, Network Rail to exercise any Flexing Rights and Network Rail shall act in accordance with the Network Code and its Network Licence in relation to the exercise of such rights in order to mitigate any deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services to the extent possible within these constraints; and
- C) - the Train Operator shall have the opportunity to seek to remedy any deterioration of either or both of:
  - 1) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services below the Baseline PPM 1; and
  - 2) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services below the OS Baseline PPM 1,

and where the Train Operator seeks to remedy such deterioration Network Rail shall cooperate with the Train Operator and provide reasonable assistance to the Train Operator, at the reasonable expense of the Train Operator, in identifying the most cost effective manner of rectifying the deterioration referred to in this paragraph.

(ii) - Where there is a deterioration in either or both of:

- 1) the Chiltern Services; and
- 2) - the Other Services,

for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 15(f)), if the Train Operator does not seek to remedy such deterioration, or the parties agree that it is not possible to remedy such deterioration, then the parties shall meet within 20 Working Days to seek to agree:

- A) - a reduced scope of the EG3 Rights Phase 1 which they consider to be appropriate in the circumstances; and
- B) - any other matter which may appear to them to be necessary or expedient in the circumstances,  
and if the parties make such an agreement, then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

(iii) - If the parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 15.1(g)(ii) within a reasonable period of time agreed between themselves, the matter shall be referred to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract and Network Rail shall, within 5 Working Days, notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration. Following the making of an award by the arbitrator in relation to matters referred to it under this paragraph 15.1(g)(iii), then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

(iv) - If the parties cannot agree:

- (A) whether, or to what extent, any deterioration of either or both of:
  - 1) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services below the Baseline PPM 1; and
  - 2) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services below the OS Baseline PPM 1,

was caused by any of the matters for which the Train Operator is responsible (as described in paragraph 15.1(f));
- (B) - the scope of any modifications to the Network and/or the Specified Equipment necessary to remedy the EG3 Phase 1 Related Deterioration;

- (C) - the method of implementing any modifications to the Network and/or the Specified Equipment which have been agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 15.1(g);
- (D) - any modifications to the quantum of the Chiltern Services; or
- (E) - the extent of any revisions to the Recorded Delay data as contemplated by paragraph 15.1(g)(i)(A)6)b),

then the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract and Network Rail shall, within 5 Working Days, notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

- (v) - Where on the expiry of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services is greater than or equal to the Baseline PPM 1 and the MAA PPM for each of the other Other Services is greater than or equal to the OS Baseline PPM 1 then there shall be no amendment to the terms of the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as specified in this Schedule 5, as a result of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period.

#### (h) Rectification

- (i) - Where the Train Operator has not commenced the planning of any infrastructure works and/or modifications to any of the Specified Equipment, and/or commenced the planning of any other activities intended to rectify the deterioration in the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services within 6 months of the parties agreeing or it being determined in accordance with paragraph 15.1(g)(iv) that all or part of the deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services to below the Baseline PPM 1 and/or of the MAA PPM for each of the Other Services to below the OS Baseline PPM 1 was caused by matters for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 15.1(f)) then the Train Operator shall be treated as having elected not to have sought to rectify the deterioration and paragraph 15.1(g)(ii) shall apply.
- (ii) - Where the Train Operator has commenced the planning of:
  - (A) - any infrastructure works and/or modifications to any of the Specified Equipment and/or commenced planning; and/or
  - (B) - any other activities intended to rectify the deterioration in the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services,

the Train Operator shall procure that such infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities are completed within a reasonable period of time agreed between Network Rail and the Train Operator.

(iii) - If the relevant infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities are not completed within the reasonable period of time agreed between the parties:

(A) - for reasons within the control of the Train Operator and/or its contractors, sub-contractors, suppliers and sub-suppliers; or

(B) - for reasons outside the control of the Train Operator and/or its contractors, sub-contractors, suppliers and sub-suppliers (save to the extent caused, or contributed to, by Network Rail) and the delay in completion of those infrastructure works and/or modifications is unreasonable having regard to the impact on the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services (it being understood that a negative impact shall not of itself necessarily render the delay unreasonable),

then the provisions of Clauses 3.9(a) and 3.9(b) of this Contract shall apply, and for the purposes of this Schedule 5 only, references to the EG3 Phase 1 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date in Clauses 3.9(a) and 3.9(b) of this Contract shall be construed as references to the expiry date of the period of time agreed between the parties in accordance with paragraph 15.1(h)(ii) above.

(iv) - Network Rail shall cooperate with the Train Operator and use its reasonable endeavours to assist the Train Operator in procuring the undertaking of the infrastructure works and/or relevant modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities within the reasonable period of time agreed between the parties.

(v) - Prior to commencing any infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities intended to rectify any deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services, the Train Operator and Network Rail shall meet and seek to agree whether there should be any reduction in the Chiltern Services during the undertaking of such infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities.

(i) - Re-Benchmarking

- (i) - Following the expiry of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall meet and seek to agree the scope and nature of any amendments to any performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) that may be necessary to reflect the level of performance risk related to the continued operation of the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services (as may be modified pursuant to paragraph 15.1(g) above).
- (ii) - If the parties agree the scope and nature of the amendments (if any) to the performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) as contemplated by paragraph 15.1(i)(i), such amendments shall be submitted to the ORR for its approval.
- (iii) - If the parties are unable to agree the scope and nature of any amendments to the performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) as contemplated by paragraph 15.1(h)(i) within 60 Working Days of first meeting either party may refer the matter to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract.
- (iv) - The performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) shall continue to apply unmodified until the scope and nature of the proposed amendments (if any) have been approved or otherwise determined by the ORR.

## 15.2 Operating Principles

- (a) - If, within a period of 20 Working Days from the start of the first Period of the EG3 Phase 1 Proving Period, either party considers (acting reasonably) it to be clear beyond doubt that the capacity to allow the EG3 Rights Phase 1 to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has not been created having regard to all relevant facts and matters including:
  - (i) - the effect of the seasons on the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Matters;
  - (ii) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable, the Network, or any equipment or other structures, which would have occurred in any event (regardless of the attempted operation of the EG3 Rights Phase 1);

- (iii) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable, the Network, or any equipment or other structures, which has occurred as a result of the attempted operation of the EG3 Rights Phase 1, but which the parties consider is unlikely to continue or re-occur in the future; and
- (iv) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable due to the unfamiliarity of drivers, signallers, controllers and other persons involved in the operation of the Network with the correct operation of the Working Timetable and/or the location and correct operation of any equipment or other structures that have been enhanced or created as part of the EG3 Project,

then that party may give notice to the other party that it considers that the EG3 Rights Phase 1 Adjustment Process should apply.

- (b) - If a notice is given pursuant to paragraph 15.2(a) then the parties shall meet as soon as reasonably practicable to seek to agree:
  - (i) - any of the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Matters which they may consider to be appropriate applying the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Criteria; and
  - (ii) - any other matter which may appear to them to be necessary or expedient in the circumstances,

and if the parties make such an agreement, then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

- (c) - If the parties fail to agree the matters referred to in the EG3 Rights Phase 1 Adjustment Process on or before the expiry of 20 Working Days following the giving of notice under paragraph 15.2(a):
  - (i) - the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract; and
  - (ii) - Network Rail shall within 5 Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.
- (d) - If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 15.2(c), the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:
  - (i) - determine the matters referred to in the EG3 Rights Phase 1 Adjustment Process and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to assess the EG3 Phase 1 Capacity Matters given

that the capacity to allow the EG3 Rights Phase 1 to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has not been created; and

(ii) - provide reasons for his award,

and if the arbitrator makes such an award, then, subject to the consent of the ORR under paragraphs 15.2(e) or 15.2(f) the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

(e) - If, having regard to all relevant facts and matters to be taken into account pursuant to paragraphs 15.2(b) - (d) the ORR is satisfied with the outcome of the arbitration pursuant to paragraphs 15.2(c) – (d), and it gives a notice to that effect, then the provisions of paragraphs 15.2(b) – (d) shall have effect.

(f) - If the ORR gives notice to the parties it is not satisfied with any or all of the outcome of the arbitration pursuant to paragraph 15.2(d) it may:

(i) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 15.2(b) - (d) for agreeing any adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 1 (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or

(ii) - (following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine any adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 1, and give a notice specifying such adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 1.

**With effect from the Water Eaton Effective Date, the contract shall be amended as shown in the following new paragraph <sup>101st</sup>**

## **16 Evergreen 3 Phase 2<sup>73rd</sup>**

### **16.1 EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period Principles**

(a) - Proving Period Duration<sup>122nd</sup>

The provisions in this paragraph 16.1 that relate to the EG3 Phase 2 Services shall only apply from the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period and the provisions in paragraph 16.2 that relate to the EG3 Phase 2 Services shall apply from the Water Eaton Effective Date, the Oxford Effective Date and from the first day following the completion of the Driver Training once the Oxford Works Completion Certificate has been issued;

(b) Baseline Performance Measure<sup>122nd</sup>

(i) - The baseline PPM for the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period for the Chiltern Services (**Baseline PPM 2**) shall be either:



(A) - the agreed performance strategy trajectory for Control Period 5;

or

(ii) - if the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period enters into Control Period 6:

(B) - the agreed equivalent target for Control Period 6.

(ii) - The baseline PPM for the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period for the Other Services (**OS Baseline PPM 2**) shall be the average of the PPM for each of the Other Services in the 26 Periods immediately prior to the first day of the EG3 Phase 2 Service Implementation Date (the **OS Initial PPM 2**).

(iii) - Network Rail shall, within 90 days of the end of the relevant Periods, provide the Train Operator with its recorded data (which shall be collected in accordance with the Network Rail performance systems) in respect of:

(A)

- 1) - Primary Delay;
- 2) - Reactionary Delay; and
- 3) - Sub-threshold Delay,

(the **Recorded Delay**) suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in each of the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 2 Service Implementation Date; and

(B) - the aggregate figures for Recorded Delay in respect of the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services in the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 2 Service Implementation Date.

(c) Performance Measurement Procedure

(i) - During the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period, Network Rail shall collect performance data relating to the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in accordance with normal industry processes.

(ii) - The Train Operator shall, acting reasonably, be entitled to audit the processes described in paragraph 16.1(c)(i).

(d) Reporting

(i) - No later than 30 days after the end of each Period in the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period, Network Rail shall calculate using the performance

data referred to in paragraph 16.1(c)(i) both the PPM in that Period (**Period PPM**) and the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and the Other Services and provide to the Train Operator the results of those calculations together with an explanation in reasonable detail of the methodology used by Network Rail in carrying out such calculations.

(ii) - the Train Operator disagrees with Network Rail's calculations, produced pursuant to paragraph 16.1(d)(i), of any of the following:

- (A) - the Period PPM for the Chiltern Services;
- (B) - the Period PPM for the Other Services;
- (C) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services; and
- (D) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services,

it shall notify Network Rail in writing describing, in reasonable detail, the grounds on which it disagrees with Network Rail's calculations. Within 10 Working Days of Network Rail receiving a notice given by the Train Operator pursuant to this paragraph 16.1(d)(ii), the Train Operator and Network Rail shall meet and seek to agree the calculation that is in dispute. If the Train Operator and Network Rail cannot agree within 40 Working Days of first meeting, either party may refer the matter to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract.

(e) **EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period and the Reporting of Recorded Delay**

Network Rail shall within 90 days of the end of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period provide the Train Operator with:

- (i) - the data showing the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project during each of the Periods during the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period; and
- (ii) - the aggregate figures for Recorded Delay in respect of the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services during the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period.

(f) **Allocation of Performance Risk**

For the purposes of this paragraph 16.1, to the extent that during the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period there is a decrease in either or both of:

- (i) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services; and

(ii) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services,

the Train Operator shall only be deemed to be responsible for that decrease where such decrease is caused by:

- (A) - delay resulting from any action or inaction of the Train Operator or its contractors;
- (B) - delay resulting from EG3 Phase 2 failing to facilitate the delivery by the Specified Equipment of the Services set out in this Schedule 5; or
- (C) - delay resulting from the Specified Equipment failing to meet the requirements of the applicable Timetable Planning Rules<sup>85th</sup>.

(g) Post Proving Period Assessment

(i) - Subject to the provisions of paragraph 16.1(f), where following the expiry of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period, the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services is below the Baseline PPM 2 and/or the MAA PPM of each of the Other Services is below the OS Baseline PPM 2:

(A) - the Train Operator and Network Rail shall cooperate and undertake an assessment of the performance attributable to EG3 Phase 2 during the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period in order to determine, with a reasonable level of certainty, the extent to which the reduction in the MAA PPM of the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services was caused by any of the matters described in paragraph 16.1(f) (A) to (C). In undertaking such assessment the parties will consider the causes of any changes to:

- 1) - Primary Delay;
- 2) - Reactionary Delay;
- 3) - the ratio of Primary Delay to Reactionary Delay; and
- 4) - Sub-threshold Delay,

relating to the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services by:

- 5) using the Recorded Delay provided to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraphs 16.1(b)(ii) and 16.1(e); and;
- 6) assessing:
  - a) - the average level of each element of Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project in the 26 Periods prior to the EG3 Phase 2 Service Implementation Date and in any completed Periods following the end of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period whilst the assessment contemplated by this paragraph 16.1(g) is undertaken by the parties;
  - b) - the extent to which the Recorded Delay suffered by the Chiltern Services and each of the Other Services as a result of the EG3 Project should be adjusted to reflect the expected impact (if any) of an increase in the quantum of trains operating along the Routes which had the same operating characteristics as the Services (**EG3 Phase 2 Revised Recorded Delay**); and
- (B) the Train Operator may request, to the extent possible under the Network Code, Network Rail to exercise any Flexing Rights and Network Rail shall act in accordance with the Network Code and its Network Licence in relation to the exercise of such rights in order to mitigate any deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services to the extent possible within these constraints; and
- (C) the Train Operator shall have the opportunity to seek to remedy any deterioration of either or both of
  - 1) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services below the Baseline PPM 2; and

- 2) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services below the OS Baseline PPM 2,

and where the Train Operator seeks to remedy such deterioration Network Rail shall cooperate with the Train Operator and provide reasonable assistance to the Train Operator, at the reasonable expense of the Train Operator, in identifying the most cost effective manner of rectifying the deterioration referred to in this paragraph.

- (ii) - Where there is a deterioration in either or both of:

- (1) - the Chiltern Services; and

- (2) - the Other Services,

for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 16(f)), if the Train Operator does not seek to remedy such deterioration, or the parties agree that it is not possible to remedy such deterioration, then the parties shall meet within 20 Working Days to seek to agree:

- (A) - a reduced scope of the EG3 Rights Phase 2 which they consider to be appropriate in the circumstances; and

- (B) - any other matter which may appear to them to be necessary or expedient in the circumstances,

and if the parties make such an agreement, then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

- (iii) - If the parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 16.1(g) (ii) within a reasonable period of time agreed between themselves, the matter shall be referred to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract and Network Rail shall, within 5 Working Days, notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration. Following the making of an award by the arbitrator in relation to matters referred to it under this paragraph 16.1(g) (iii), then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

- (iv) If the parties cannot agree: -

(A) - whether, or to what extent, any deterioration of either or both of:

- 1) - the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services below the Baseline PPM 2; and
- 2) - the MAA PPM for the Other Services below the OS Baseline PPM 2,

was caused by any of the matters for which the Train Operator is responsible (as described in paragraph 16.1(f));

(B) - the scope of any modifications to the Network and/or the Specified Equipment necessary to remedy the EG3 Phase 2 Related Deterioration;

(C) - the method of implementing any modifications to the Network and/or the Specified Equipment which have been agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 16.1(g);

(D) - any modifications to the quantum of the Chiltern Services; or

(E) - the extent of any revisions to the Recorded Delay data as contemplated by paragraph 16.1(g)(i)(A)6b),

then the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract and Network Rail shall, within 5 Working Days, notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

(v) - Where on the expiry of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services is greater than or equal to the Baseline PPM 2 and the MAA PPM for each of the Other Services below the OS Baseline PPM 2 then there shall be no amendment to the terms of the Chiltern Services as specified in this Schedule 5, as a result of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period.

(h) - Rectification

(i) - Where the Train Operator has not commenced the planning of any infrastructure works and/or modifications to any of the Specified Equipment, and/or commenced the planning of any other activities intended to rectify the deterioration in the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services within 6 months of the parties agreeing or it being determined in accordance with paragraph 16.1(g)(iv) that all or part of the deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services to below the Baseline PPM 2 and/or

each of the Other Services to below the OS Baseline PPM 2 was caused by matters for which the Train Operator is responsible (as set out in paragraph 16.1(f)) then the Train Operator shall be treated as having elected not to have sought to rectify the deterioration and paragraph 16.1(g)(ii) shall apply.

- (ii) - Where the Train Operator has commenced the planning of:
  - (A) - any infrastructure works and/or modifications to any of the Specified Equipment and/or commenced planning; and/or
  - (B) - any other activities intended to rectify the deterioration in the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services,

the Train Operator shall procure that such infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities are completed within a reasonable period of time agreed between Network Rail and the Train Operator.

- (iii) - If the relevant infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities are not completed within the reasonable period of time agreed between the parties:
  - (A) - for reasons within the control of the Train Operator and/or its contractors, sub-contractors, suppliers and sub-suppliers; or
  - (B) - for reasons outside the control of the Train Operator and/or its contractors, sub-contractors, suppliers and sub-suppliers (save to the extent caused, or contributed to, by Network Rail) and the delay in completion of those infrastructure works and/or modifications is unreasonable having regard to the impact on the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services (it being understood that a negative impact shall not of itself necessarily render the delay unreasonable),

then the provisions of Clauses 3.10(a) to (f) of this Contract shall apply, and for the purposes of this Schedule 5 only, references to the EG3 Phase 2 Condition Subsequent Longstop Date in Clauses 3.10(a) to (f) of this Contract shall be construed as references to the expiry date of the period of time agreed between the parties in accordance with paragraph 16.1(h) (ii) above.

- (iv) - Network Rail shall cooperate with the Train Operator and use its reasonable endeavours to assist the Train Operator in procuring the undertaking of the

infrastructure works and/or relevant modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities within the reasonable period of time agreed between the parties.

- (v) - Prior to commencing any infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities intended to rectify any deterioration of the MAA PPM for the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services, the Train Operator and Network Rail shall meet and seek to agree whether there should be any reduction in the Chiltern Services during the undertaking of such infrastructure works, modifications to the Specified Equipment and/or other activities.
- (i) - Re-Benchmarking
  - (i) - Following the expiry of the EG3 Phase 2 Proving Period, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall meet and seek to agree the scope and nature of any amendments to any performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) that may be necessary to reflect the level of performance risk related to the continued operation of the Chiltern Services and/or each of the Other Services (as may be modified pursuant to paragraph 16.1(g) above).
  - (ii) - If the parties agree the scope and nature of the amendments (if any) to the performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) as contemplated by paragraph 16.1(i)(i), such amendments shall be submitted to the ORR for its approval.
  - (iii) - If the parties are unable to agree the scope and nature of any amendments to the performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) as contemplated by paragraph 16.1(h)(i) within 60 Working Days of first meeting either party may refer the matter to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract.
  - (iv) - The performance regime provisions contained in Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) shall continue to apply unmodified until the scope and nature of the proposed amendments (if any) have been approved or otherwise determined by the ORR.



## 16.2 Operating Principles

(a) - If, within a period of 20 Working Days from the start of the first Period following the Water Eaton Effective Date and 40 Working Days for the start of the first Period following the Oxford Effective Date and from the first day following the completion of the driver training once the Oxford Works Completion Certificate has been issued, either party considers (acting reasonably) it to be clear beyond doubt that the capacity to allow the EG3 Rights Phase 2 to be operated reliably in accordance with the Working Timetable has not been created having regard to all relevant facts and matters including;<sup>122nd</sup>

- (i) - the effect of the seasons on the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Matters;
- (ii) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable, the Network, or any equipment or other structures, which would have occurred in any event (regardless of the attempted operation of the EG3 Rights Phase 2);
- (iii) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable, the Network, or any equipment or other structures, which has occurred as a result of the attempted operation of the EG3 Rights Phase 2, but which the parties consider is unlikely to continue or re-occur in the future; and
- (iv) - any failure in the operation of the Working Timetable due to the unfamiliarity of drivers, signallers, controllers and other persons involved in the operation of the Network with the correct operation of the Working Timetable and/or the location and correct operation of any equipment or other structures that have been enhanced or created as part of the EG3 Project,

then that party may give notice to the other party that it considers that the EG3 Rights Phase 2 Adjustment Process should apply.

(b) - If a notice is given pursuant to paragraph 16.2(a) then the parties shall meet as soon as reasonably practicable to seek to agree:

- (i) - any of the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Matters which they may consider to be appropriate applying the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Criteria; and
- (ii) - any other matter which may appear to them to be necessary or expedient in the circumstances,

and if the parties make such an agreement, then, subject to the consent of the ORR, the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.

- (c) - If the parties fail to agree the matters referred to in the EG3 Rights Phase 2 Adjustment Process on or before the expiry of 20 Working Days following the giving of notice under paragraph 16.2(a):
  - (i) - the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Clause 13 of this Contract; and
  - (ii) - Network Rail shall within 5 Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.
- (d) - If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 16.2(c), the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:
  - (i) - determine the matters referred to in the EG3 Rights Phase 2 Adjustment Process and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to assess the EG3 Phase 2 Capacity Matters given that the capacity to allow the EG3 Rights Phase 2 to be operated in accordance with the Working Timetable has not been created; and
  - (ii) - provide reasons for his award,

and if the arbitrator makes such an award, then, subject to the consent of the ORR under paragraphs 16.2(e) or 16.2(f) the provisions of this Schedule 5 shall be modified accordingly.
- (e) - If, having regard to all relevant facts and matters to be taken into account pursuant to paragraphs 16.2(b) - (d) the ORR is satisfied with the outcome of the arbitration pursuant to paragraphs 16.2(c) – (d), and it gives a notice to that effect, then the provisions of paragraphs 16.2(b) – (d) shall have effect.
- (f) - If the ORR gives notice to the parties it is not satisfied with any or all of the outcome of the arbitration pursuant to paragraph 16.2(d) it may:
  - (i) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 16.2(b) - (d) for agreeing any adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 2 (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
  - (ii) - following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine any adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 2, and give a notice specifying such adjustment to the EG3 Rights Phase 2.

## **Schedule 6 Events of Default, suspension and termination**

### **1. Events of Default**

#### *1.1 Train Operator Events of Default*

The following are Train Operator Events of Default:

- (a) - the Train Operator ceases to be authorised to be the operator of trains for the provision of the Services by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act unless it is exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;
- (b) - an Insolvency Event occurs in relation to the Train Operator or the Franchisee;
- (c) - (i) any breach by the Train Operator of this contract, its Safety Obligations or any of the Collateral Agreements; or  
(ii) - any event or circumstance which is reasonably likely to result in any such breach,

which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, event or circumstance, Network Rail reasonably considers constitutes a threat to the safe operation of any part of the Network;

- (d) - any Track Charges or other amount due by the Train Operator to Network Rail under this contract remain unpaid for more than 7 days after their due date;
- (e) - any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by the Train Operator which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material financial loss to Network Rail;
- (f) - any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by the Train Operator which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material disruption to train operations of other train operators;
- (g) - the Franchise Agreement is terminated; and<sup>72nd</sup>
- (h) - The Train Operator fails to agree to the suite of agreements necessary to enable the “Outline Evergreen 3 Works” or fails to deliver the “Outline Evergreen 3 Works.”<sup>77th</sup>

#### *1.2 Notification*

The Train Operator shall notify Network Rail promptly on becoming aware of the occurrence of a Train Operator Event of Default.

#### *1.3 Network Rail Events of Default*

The following are Network Rail Events of Default:

- (a) - Network Rail ceases to be authorised to be the operator of that part of the Network comprising the Routes by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act unless exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;

- (b) - an Insolvency Event occurs in relation to Network Rail;
- (c) - (i) any breach by Network Rail of this contract, its Safety Obligations or any of the Collateral Agreements; or
  - (ii) - any event or circumstance which is reasonably likely to result in any such breach,
 which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, event or circumstance the Train Operator reasonably considers constitutes a threat to the safe operation of the Services or any Ancillary Movements; and
- (d) - any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by Network Rail which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material financial loss to the Train Operator.

#### *1.4 Notification*

Network Rail shall notify the Train Operator promptly on becoming aware of the occurrence of a Network Rail Event of Default.

## **2. Suspension**

### *2.1 Right to suspend*

- 2.1.1 - Network Rail may serve a Suspension Notice where a Train Operator Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.
- 2.1.2 - The Train Operator may serve a Suspension Notice where a Network Rail Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.

### *2.2 Contents of Suspension Notice*

A Suspension Notice shall specify:

- (a) - the nature of the relevant Event of Default;
- (b) - the date and time at which suspension is to take effect;
- (c) - in the case of a Suspension Notice served on the Train Operator, reasonable restrictions imposed while the Suspension Notice is in force on the permission to use the Routes or any parts of them or any other part of the Network;
- (d) - in the case of a Suspension Notice served on Network Rail, details of any necessary suspension of the Services; and
- (e) - whether the party serving the Suspension Notice reasonably considers that the Event of Default is capable of remedy, and where the Event of Default is capable of remedy:
  - (i) - the steps reasonably required to remedy the Event of Default; and
  - (ii) - a reasonable grace period for the defaulting party to remedy it (where the Event of Default which has occurred is a failure to pay Track Charges or other amount due, 7 days shall be a reasonable grace period).

### 2.3 *Effect of Suspension Notice served by Network Rail*

Where Network Rail has served a Suspension Notice on the Train Operator:

- (a) - the Train Operator shall comply with any reasonable restrictions imposed on it by the Suspension Notice;
- (b) - the Suspension Notice shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms until it has been revoked either in whole or in part by notice from Network Rail to the Train Operator under paragraph 2.5.4;
- (c) - service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's continuing obligation to pay the Track Charges; and
- (d) - service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's Firm Rights (as defined in Schedule 5) for the purposes of <sup>MOD A</sup> Part D of the Network Code.

### 2.4 *Effect of a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator*

Where the Train Operator has served a Suspension Notice on Network Rail:

- (a) - it shall have the effect of suspending the Train Operator's permission to use the Routes to provide the Services to the extent specified in the Suspension Notice;
- (b) - in relation to Services suspended by the Suspension Notice, the amount of the Fixed Track Charge (as that term is defined in Schedule 7) shall be abated on a daily basis by an amount equal to the proportion of passenger vehicle miles not run on any day due to the suspension divided by the passenger vehicle miles timetabled for [the Corresponding Day to that day (as that term is defined and determined under Part 3 of Schedule 4)], as multiplied by the daily amount of the Fixed Track Charge (as so defined);
- (c) - the Suspension Notice shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms until it has been revoked either in whole or in part by notice from the Train Operator to Network Rail under paragraph 2.5.4; and
- (d) - the service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's Firm Rights (as defined in Schedule 5) for the purposes of <sup>MOD A</sup> Part D of the Network Code.

### 2.5 *Suspension to be proportionate to breach*

2.5.1 - A Suspension Notice served under paragraph 2.3 in respect of any of the Train Operator Events of Default specified in paragraphs (a) and (c) to (f) (inclusive) of paragraph 1.1 shall, so far as reasonably practicable, apply only to the:

- (a) - railway vehicles;
- (b) - Services;
- (c) - Routes; and
- (d) - categories of train movements or railway vehicles,  
(or (as the case may be) parts or part of them) to which the relevant Train Operator Event of Default relates.

2.5.2 - A Suspension Notice served under paragraph 2.4 in respect of any of the Network Rail Events of Default specified in paragraphs 1.3(a), (c) and (d) shall, so far as reasonably practicable, apply only to the:

- (a) - railway vehicles;
  - (b) - Services;
  - (c) - Routes; and
  - (d) - categories of train movements or railway vehicles,
- (or (as the case may be) parts or part of them) to which the relevant Network Rail Event of Default relates.

2.5.3 - The party served with a Suspension Notice which specifies an Event of Default which is capable of remedy shall:

- (a) - with all reasonable diligence, take such steps as are specified in the Suspension Notice to remedy the Event of Default; and
- (b) - keep the party serving the Suspension Notice fully informed of the progress which is being made in remedying the Event of Default.

2.5.4 - Where a party served with a Suspension Notice has complied with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3 (whether in whole or in part) and it is reasonable for the suspension effected by the Suspension Notice to be revoked (whether in whole or in part), the party which served the Suspension Notice shall revoke the suspension to that extent. Such revocation shall be effected as soon as practicable after the remedy in question by notice to the other party specifying the extent of the revocation and the date on which it is to have effect.

### **3. Termination**

#### *3.1 Network Rail's right to terminate*

Network Rail may serve a Termination Notice on the Train Operator:

- (a) - where the Train Operator fails to comply with any material restriction in a Suspension Notice;
- (b) - where the Train Operator fails to comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3;
- (c) - where the Train Operator Event of Default specified in paragraph 1.1(a) has occurred and is continuing; or
- (d) - where the Train Operator Event of Default specified in a Suspension Notice served by Network Rail is not capable of being remedied and three months have elapsed from the service of that Suspension Notice.

#### *3.2 Train Operator's right to terminate*

The Train Operator may serve a Termination Notice on Network Rail:

- (a) - where Network Rail fails to comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3;

- (b) - where the Network Rail Event of Default specified in paragraph 1.3(a) has occurred and is continuing; or
- (c) - where the Network Rail Event of Default specified in a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator is not capable of being remedied and three months have elapsed from the service of that Suspension Notice.

### 3.3 *Contents of Termination Notice*

A Termination Notice shall specify:

- (a) - the nature of the relevant Event of Default;
- (b) - a date and time, which shall be reasonable in the circumstances, at which termination is to take effect; and
- (c) - whether the party serving the Termination Notice reasonably considers that the Event of Default is capable of remedy, and where the relevant Event of Default is capable of remedy:
  - (i) - the steps which the party serving the Termination Notice believes are reasonably required to remedy the Event of Default; and
  - (ii) - a reasonable grace period within which such steps may be taken (where the Event of Default is a failure of the Train Operator to pay Track Charges or other amounts due, 7 days is a reasonable grace period).

### 3.4 *Effect of Termination Notice*

Where Network Rail or the Train Operator has served a Termination Notice on the other:

- (a) - the service of the Termination Notice shall not affect the parties' continuing obligations under this contract up to the date of termination, which date shall be determined in accordance with paragraph 3.4(c);
- (b) - the party which has served the Termination Notice shall withdraw it by notice to the other party, upon being reasonably satisfied that the relevant Event of Default has been remedied; and
- (c) - this contract shall terminate on the later of:
  - (i) - the date and time specified in the Termination Notice for the contract to terminate (or such later date and time as the party which served the Termination Notice notifies to the other before the date and time so specified); and
  - (ii) - the date on which a copy of the Termination Notice is given to the Regulator.

## 4. **Consequence of termination**

### 4.1 *Directions regarding location of Specified Equipment*

Immediately before, upon or following termination or expiry of this contract, the Train Operator shall comply or procure compliance with all reasonable directions given by Network Rail concerning the location of the Specified Equipment.

*4.2 Failure to comply with directions*

If the Train Operator fails to comply with any directions given under paragraph 4.1, Network Rail shall be entitled to remove from the Network or Stable any Specified Equipment left on the Network or to instruct a third party to do so and any reasonable costs incurred by Network Rail in taking such steps shall be paid promptly by the Train Operator.

*4.3 Evidence of costs*

Network Rail shall provide such evidence of such costs as are referred to in paragraph 4.2 as the Train Operator shall reasonably request.



## **Schedule 7 Track Charges<sup>129th</sup>**

### **PART 1: INTERPRETATION**

#### **1 Definitions**

In Parts 1-7 inclusive, unless the context otherwise requires:

<b>“access charges review”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it by Schedule 4A to the Act;
<b>“AC System”</b>	means the alternating current system of electricity traction supply on the Network;
<b>“Adjusted Sum”</b>	means the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 8I.3;
<b>“Aggregate Fixed Charges”</b>	means, in any Relevant Year $t$ , the sum of the values of $F_t$ under paragraph 1 of Part 2 and the corresponding provisions of each other relevant access agreement;
<b>“Asset Life”</b>	means the thirty (30) year life of an MS Enhanced Asset of which an MS Deliverable forms part, which runs from the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date;
<b>“Backstop Date”</b>	means the date upon which EG3 Phase 1 or EG3 Phase 2 (as appropriate) reaches Stage Gate 5;
<b>“Baseline timetabled traffic miles”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2A of Part 2;
<b>“Basic Amount”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1(a) of Part 3A;
<b>“Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit”</b>	means an electric multiple unit that is capable of drawing current from the AC System and/or DC System and, in addition, being powered by an alternative source of energy, including but not limited to diesel;
<b>“Bimodal Locomotive”</b>	means a train hauled by a locomotive that is capable of drawing current from the AC System and/or DC System and, in addition, being powered by an alternative source of energy, including but not limited to diesel;
<b>“Capacity Charge”</b>	means a variable charge, calculated in accordance with paragraph 6 of Part 2;

<b>“CPI”</b>	<p>means the Consumer Prices Index (all items) whose value is published each month by the Office for National Statistics in its statistical bulletin on consumer price inflation, or:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) if the Consumer Prices Index for any month in any year shall not have been published on or before the last day of the third month after such month, such index for such month or months as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances; or</li> <li>(b) if there is a material change in the basis of the Consumer Prices Index, such other index as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances;</li> </ul>
<b>“DC System”</b>	means the direct current system of electricity traction supply on the Network;
<b>“Default Train Consist Data”</b>	means the data listed in Appendix 7C as amended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 10.4 of Part 2;
<b>“Deliverable Financing Charge”</b>	means the interest, calculated at a pre-tax annual rate which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre-tax rate, chargeable by Network Rail on the Purchase Price for the MS Deliverables in respect of the period between the dates of payment for the MS Deliverables and the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date, and compounded at the end of each Relevant Year;
<b>“Deliverables”</b>	means the EG3 Phase 1 Deliverables;
<b>“EG3 Asset Life”</b>	means in respect of EG3 Phase 1 only, the thirty year life of an EG3 Asset of which a Deliverable forms part which runs from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date;
<b>“EG3 Deliverable Financing Charge”</b>	means the interest, calculated at a pre-tax annual rate which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre-tax rate, chargeable by Network Rail on the Purchase Price for the Deliverables in respect of the period between the date of payment for the Deliverables and the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date, and compounded at the end of each Relevant Year;

<b>“EG3 Incremental MRR Charge”</b>	means each of the Phase 1 Incremental MRR Charge, the Water Eaton Incremental MRR Charge and the Oxford Incremental MRR Charge as calculated in accordance with paragraph 8K;
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Accrued DFC”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 8H.1(a);
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Additional Accrued DFC”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 8H.1(b);
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Additional Deliverable Financing Charge”</b>	Means the interest, calculated at a pre-tax annual rate which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR’s CP4 pre-tax rate, chargeable by Network Rail on the Purchase Price for the Deliverables in respect of the period between the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date, or if later, the dates of payment for the EG3 Phase 1 Deliverables, and the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date compounded at the end of each Relevant Year;
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Revised Completion Date”</b>	means 4th September 2011 or such other date as Network Rail agrees in its absolute discretion;
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable”</b>	means an EG3 Phase 1 deliverable specified in Schedule 2 of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement;
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in respect of the capital cost of an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable purchased by Network Rail and any associated EG3 Phase 1 Accrued DFC, the total amount of such EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8H of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“EG 3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date”</b>	means the earlier of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the EG3 Phase 1 Revised Completion Date;</li> <li>(b) the date of termination of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement; and</li> <li>(c) the date of termination of the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement;</li> </ul>
<b>“EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date”</b>	means the 22 May 2011;
<b>“Electrification Asset Usage Charge”</b>	means a charge for electrification asset usage, calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 of Part 2;
<b>“English &amp; Welsh Grant Compensation Amount”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 3.2 of Part 3A;
<b>“English &amp; Welsh Grant Dilution”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.1 of Part 3A;

<b>“English &amp; Welsh Grant Dilution Date”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.2 of Part 3A;
<b>“excluded change”</b>	means, in relation to paragraph 2(a) of Part 7, a change to the arrangements established between Network Rail and any other person in respect of the payment of any amount under sections 6 or 8 of the Railways Act 2005;
<b>“Final Contribution Sum Determination Date”</b>	means the date on which the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge and the Oxford Final Facility Charge are determined pursuant to paragraph 4 of part 3 of Schedule 2 of the Contribution Agreement;
<b>“Fixed Track Charge”</b>	means a fixed annual charge, calculated in accordance with paragraph 1 of Part 2;
<b>“Fixed Track Charge Indexation”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2 of Part 2;
<b>“Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up”</b>	means the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 2A of Part 2;
<b>“Geographic Area g”</b>	means, for the purposes of performing the calculations set out in paragraph 4 of Part 2 and paragraph 18 of the Traction Electricity Rules, the relevant geographic section of the Network, as set out in Appendix 5 of the Traction Electricity Rules;
<b>“Grant Agreement”</b>	means the Grant Agreement made on or before 31 March 2019 between the Secretary of State and Network Rail for the payment of network grant;
<b>“Grant Amount”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1(b) of Part 3A;
<b>“Grant Mechanism”</b>	means the provisions agreed on or before 31 January 2019 between Network Rail and the Secretary of State (and approved by ORR for the purposes of Part 3A on or before 28 February 2019) setting out how the annual amounts of network grant contained in Table E2B may vary or if no such provisions are agreed and approved, such provisions as ORR may determine on or before 31 March 2019 after consulting Network Rail and the Secretary of State;
<b>“GRIP”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement;
<b>“Gross Tonne Mile”</b>	in relation to a train, means a mile travelled on the Network, multiplied by each tonne of the aggregate weight of the train in question;

**“Incremental MRR Charge”** has the meaning given in paragraph 8K.3;

**“Initial Indexation Factor”** is derived from the following formula:

$$IIF = \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{2018} - CPI_{2017})}{CPI_{2017}} \right)^2$$

where:

IIF means the Initial Indexation Factor;

CPI<sub>2017</sub> means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2017; and

CPI<sub>2018</sub> means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2018;

The value derived from this formula shall be rounded to three decimal places;

**“kgtm”** means 1000 Gross Tonne Miles;

**“kWh”** means kilowatt hours;

**“Metered Train m”** means, as the context requires, either:

(a) a train of a particular type; or

(b) a specific train having a train ID,

as specified in Appendix 7D of this Schedule 7;

**“MS Accrued DFC”** has the meaning given in paragraph 8F.1;

**“MS Additional Deliverable”** means the Regulatory Asset Base addition as specified in the ORR letter from John Larkinson to Graham Cross of Chiltern Railway Company Limited dated 30 March 2011;

**“MS additional Facility Charge Accrued DFC”** has the meaning given in paragraph 8L.1;

<b>“MS Additional Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in respect of the capital cost of an MS Additional Deliverable purchased by Network Rail and any associated MS Additional Facility Charge Accrued DFC, the total amount of such MS Additional Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8L.1 of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“MS Additional Deliverable Facility Charge Date”</b>	means the date upon which an MS Additional Deliverable is Taken into Use as part of an MS Enhanced Asset;
<b>“MS Additional Facility Charge Term”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 8L.3(b)(ii)(B);
<b>“MS Deliverable”</b>	means a deliverable specified in Schedule 3 of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement;
<b>“MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date”</b>	means the date upon which an MS Deliverable is Taken into Use as part of an MS Enhanced Asset;
<b>“MS Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in respect of the capital cost of an MS Deliverable purchased by Network Rail and any associated MS Accrued DFC, the total amount of such MS Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8F of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“MS Purchase Price”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the MS Asset Purchase Agreement;
<b>“Network Rail Distribution System Loss Factor”</b>	means the relevant factor that represents the electrical losses between the On-Train Meter and Network Rail’s meter through which it purchases traction electricity for the AC System or the DC System in Geographic Area g, as set out in Appendix 3 of the Traction Electricity Rules;
<b>“Network Rail Rebate”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.1 of Part 2;

<b>“New Modelled Train”</b>	means a type of train for which $E_{tmo}$ is to be calculated for the purposes of paragraph 4.1.1 of Part 2 but in relation to which no train category i, and no modelled consumption rate, is shown in either the Passenger Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates for CP6 or Generic Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates for CP6 tables in the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, or the PFM Rates List;
<b>“New Specified Equipment”</b>	means a type of railway vehicle not included in the section of the Track Usage Price List entitled “Passenger Variable Usage Charge rates”;
<b>“Notice of Consent”</b>	means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 8K.4(g);
<b>“Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications”</b>	means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 8K.4(h)(ii);
<b>“Notice of Procedural Modifications”</b>	means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 8K.4(l) modifying any aspect of the procedures in paragraph 8K.4;
<b>“On-Train Meter” and “On-Train Metering”</b>	have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 1.2 of the Traction Electricity Rules;
<b>“ORR’s Criteria”</b>	means the criteria set out in paragraph 8K.4(k);
<b>“Oxford Contribution Sum”</b>	means the sum calculated in accordance with paragraph 3 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 of the Contribution Agreement less an amount that is equal to the Wolvercot Tunnel Capital Sum;
<b>“Oxford Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in relation to the Oxford Works as determined by reference to the Oxford Contribution Sum, the total amount of such Oxford Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8I.2 of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);

<b>“Oxford Facility Charge Date”</b>	means with effect from the Oxford Effective Date the earlier of the date upon which the Oxford Services are first to be operated by the Train Operator on the Routes from Bicester South Junction to Oxford via Bicester Village and the date that is six (6) months from the Oxford Effective Date; <sup>114th</sup>
<b>“Oxford Final Contribution Sum”</b>	means the sum calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.3 of Schedule 2 Part 3 of the Contribution Agreement less an amount that is equal to the Wolvercot Tunnel Capital Sum;
<b>“Oxford Final Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in relation to the Oxford Works, the total amount of such Oxford Final Facility Charge being calculate for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8I.5 of the Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Oxford Incremental MRR Charge”</b>	means the charge calculated in accordance with paragraph 8K.1(C) of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Oxford Services”</b>	means the railway passenger services specified in Tables 2.1(d)(B), 3.1(d)(B), 3.3(d)(B), 4.1(d)(B), 5.1(d)(B), 6.1(d)(B) and 6.2(b)(B) of Appendix 8(b) of Schedule 5;
<b>“Payment Date”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1(c) of Part 3A;
<b>“Phase 1 Incremental MRR Charge”</b>	means the charge calculated in accordance with paragraphs 8K.1(A) of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Period”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
<b>“PFM Rate”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of the Traction Electricity Rules;
<b>“PFM Rates List”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of the Traction Electricity Rules;
<b>“Proposed Review Notice”</b>	means the most recently proposed Review Notice given by ORR, in accordance with Schedule 4A of the Act;
<b>“Purchase Price”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement;
<b>“Rebatable Amount”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.2 of Part 2;



<b>“relevant access agreement”</b>	<p>means an access agreement under which any of the following persons obtains permission from Network Rail to use the Network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a franchise operator; or</li> <li>(b) a concession operator within the meaning of the Merseyrail Electrics Network Order 2003; or</li> <li>(c) a TfL concessionaire within the meaning of the Railways (North and West London Lines) Exemption Order 2007; or</li> <li>(d) any other person who benefits from a franchise exemption (within the meaning of section 24(13) of the Act) in relation to services for the carriage of passengers by railway; or</li> <li>(e) a relevant franchising authority (as defined in section 30(3B) of the Act) or a person providing services for the carriage of passengers by railway on behalf of a relevant franchising authority under section 30 of the Act;</li> </ul>
<b>“Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications”</b>	<p>means:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the value of the Incremental MRR Charge for each of the EG3 Phase 1 Assets and the EG3 Phase 2 Assets (as appropriate); and</li> <li>(b) any modifications to any other provision of the Contract which are necessary as a consequence of any modifications under limb (a) above;</li> </ul>
<b>“Relevant Year”</b>	<p>means a year commencing at 0000 hours on 1 April and ending at 2359 hours on the following 31 March; “Relevant Year t” means the Relevant Year for the purposes of which any calculation falls to be made; “Relevant Year t-1” means the Relevant Year preceding Relevant Year t; and similar expressions shall be construed accordingly;</p>
<b>“Review Implementation Notice”</b>	<p>has the meaning given to “review implementation notice” in paragraph 7 of Schedule 4A of the Act;</p>
<b>“Review Notice”</b>	<p>has the meaning given to “review notice” in paragraph 4 of Schedule 4A of the Act;</p>
<b>“Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share”</b>	<p>has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of Part 3;</p>

<b>“route type k”</b>	means route type k as identified by type of electrification (AC (OLE) or DC) in the Track Usage Price List;
<b>“RPI”</b>	<p>means the General Index of Retail Prices All Items measured by CHAW and published each month, or:</p> <p>(a) if the index for any month in any year shall not have been published on or before the last day of the third month after such month, such index for such month or months as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances; or</p> <p>(b) if there is a material change in the basis of the index, such other index as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances;</p>
<b>“Schedule of Baseline Timetabled Traffic”</b>	means the document entitled “Schedule of Baseline Timetabled Traffic” approved by ORR on or before 31 July 2019 (or, if not approved by that date, otherwise determined by ORR thereafter);
<b>“Schedule of Fixed Charges”</b>	means the document entitled “Schedule of Fixed Charges” published by Network Rail on or about 20 December 2018;
<b>“Stage Gate 4”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the EG3 Asset Protection Agreement;
<b>“Stage Gate 5”</b>	means the approval stage reached in accordance with GRIP when approval of detailed design is required, as may be amended from time to time
<b>“Start Date”</b>	means the date upon which EG3 Phase 1 or EG3 Phase 2 (as appropriate) passes Stage Gate 4;
<b>“Table E2B”</b>	means Table E2B in ORR’s document entitled “PR18 final determination – Supplementary document – financial framework October 2018”;
<b>“Taken into Use”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the MS Asset Purchase Agreement;

<b>“tariff band j”</b>	means the tariff zone and time band in which the train in question is operated;
<b>“Timetabled Train Miles”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2A of Part 2;
<b>“Track Usage Price List”</b>	means the document entitled “Track Usage Price List” published by Network Rail on or about 20 December 2018 which, for the purposes of this contract, shall be deemed to incorporate any supplements to that document consented to or determined pursuant to paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 to this contract, or a passenger track access contract previously held by the Train Operator;
<b>“Traction Electricity Charge”</b>	means a variable charge for traction current calculated in accordance with paragraph 4 of Part 2;
<b>“Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List”</b>	means the document entitled “Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List” published by Network Rail on or about 20 December 2018 and specifying freight and passenger traction electricity modelled consumption rates which, for the purposes of this contract, shall be deemed to incorporate any supplements to that document consented to or determined pursuant to paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 to this contract or a passenger track access contract previously held by the Train Operator;
<b>“Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate”</b>	means, in respect of any New Modelled Train used on the Network by the Train Operator, the corresponding default consumption rate for that type of vehicle set out in the section of the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List entitled “Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rates for CP6”;
<b>“Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate Period”</b>	means the period from the date on which the New Modelled Train is first used on the Network by the Train Operator until the date on which ORR consents to or determines a supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List under paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 in respect of that New Modelled Train or the train in question has been added to Appendix 7D of this Schedule 7;

<b>“Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate Reconciliation Period”</b>	<p>means the period from the later of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the date on which the New Modelled Train is first used on the Network by the Train Operator;</li> <li>or</li> <li>(b) 1 April of the Relevant Year in which ORR consents to or determines a supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List under paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 in respect of that New Modelled Train,</li> </ul> <p>until the date on which ORR consents to or determines a supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List under paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 in respect of that New Modelled Train;</p>
<b>“Traction Electricity Usage Occurrence Data”</b>	<p>means information as to when a Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive is either drawing current from the AC System and/or the DC System, or is powered by an alternative source of energy;</p>
<b>“Traction-Train Compatible”</b>	<p>means a situation in which a Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive is located on the Network with a system of electricity traction supply that the Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive is capable of drawing current from;</p>

<b>“train category i”</b>	<p>means train category i as identified in the relevant section of the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List or PFM Rates List, being either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) where there is no PFM Rate for a particular passenger vehicle type operating on a particular Train Service Code: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) where there is a modelled consumption rate for a particular passenger vehicle type operating on a particular Train Service Code, the relevant category set out in the table entitled "Passenger Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates for CP6"; or</li> <li>(ii) where there is a generic consumption rate for a passenger vehicle type not referred to in paragraph (a)(i), the relevant category set out in the table entitled “Generic Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates for CP6”; or</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) where there is a PFM Rate for a particular passenger vehicle type operating on a particular Train Service Code, the relevant category set out in the PFM Rates List;</li> </ul>
<b>“Train Consist Data”</b>	means the information relating to the number(s) and type(s) of railway vehicle comprised in a train movement;
<b>“Train Mile”</b>	in relation to a train, means a mile travelled by that train on the Network;
<b>“Train Service Code”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 5;
<b>“Variable Charges”</b>	means the Capacity Charge, the VUC Default Charge, the Electrification Asset Usage Charge, the Variable Usage Charge and the Traction Electricity Charge;
<b>“Variable Usage Charge”</b>	means a variable charge, calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of Part 2;
<b>“Vehicle Mile”</b>	in relation to a railway vehicle, means a mile travelled by that vehicle on the Network;
<b>“Volume Reconciliation”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in the Traction Electricity Rules;

<b>“VUC Default Charge”</b>	means a variable charge calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.3 of Part 2;
<b>“VUC Default Period”</b>	means the period from the later of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the date on which the New Specified Equipment is first used on the Network by the Train Operator; or</li> <li>(b) 1 April 2019,</li> </ul> until the date on which ORR consents to or determines a supplement to the Track Usage Price List under paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 in respect of that New Specified Equipment;
<b>“VUC Default Rate”</b>	means, in respect of any New Specified Equipment used on the Network by the Train Operator, the corresponding passenger default rate for that type of vehicle set out in the section of the Track Usage Price List entitled “Passenger Variable Usage Charge default rates”;
<b>“Water Eaton Contribution Sum”</b>	means the sum calculated in accordance with paragraph 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 of the Contribution Agreement;
<b>“Water Eaton Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in relation to the Water Eaton Works as determined by reference to the Water Eaton Contribution Sum, the total amount of such Water Eaton Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8I.1 of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Water Eaton Facility Charge Date”</b>	means until the Oxford Effective Date the earlier of the date upon which the Water Eaton Services are first to be operated by the Train Operator on the Routes from Bicester South Junction to Oxford Parkway via Bicester Village and the date that is six (6) months from the Water Eaton Effective Date; <sup>114th</sup>
<b>“Water Eaton Final Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in relation to the Water Eaton Works, the total amount of such Water Eaton Final Facility Charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8I.4 of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Water Eaton Final Contribution Sum”</b>	means the sum calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.3 of Schedule 2 Part 3 of the Contribution Agreement;

<b>“Water Eaton Incremental MRR Charge”</b>	means the charge calculated in accordance with paragraph 8K.1(B) of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges);
<b>“Water Eaton Services”</b>	Means the railway passenger services specified in Tables 2.1(d)(A), 3.1(d)(A), 3.3(d)(A), 4.1(d)(A), 5.1(d)(A), 6.1(d)(A) and 6.2(b)(A) of Appendix 8(b) of Schedule 5;
<b>“Weekday”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 5;
<b>“Wolvercot Tunnel Works”</b>	means the works in relation to Wolvercot tunnel more fully described in the Contribution Agreement at Schedule 3 paragraph 2.2(b);
<b>“Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge”</b>	means the charge payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in respect of the capital cost for the Wolvercot Tunnel Works the total amount of such charge being calculated for each Relevant Year in accordance with paragraph 8J of this Schedule 7 (Track Charges); and
<b>“Wolvercot Tunnel Capital Sum”</b>	means the capital cost of the Wolvercot Tunnel Works being [     ]

## 2 Interpretation

The provisions of Clause 1.2(e) of this contract shall not apply to any references to the Grant Agreement in this Schedule 7.

## PART 2: TRACK CHARGES

### 1 Principal formula

During each Relevant Year (and, in respect of  $F_t$ , prorated for each day of any period of this contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year), Network Rail shall levy and the Train Operator shall pay Track Charges in accordance with the following formula:

$$T_t = F_t + FW_t + V_t + D_t + E_t + K_t + EAV_t - W_t$$

where:

$T_t$  means Track Charges in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$F_t$  means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ , expressed in pounds sterling and rounded to two decimal places, which shall be:

- (a) in respect of the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019, the total of the amounts set out in the row relating to the Train Operator and the column relating to that year in the Schedule of Fixed Charges, multiplied by the Fixed Track Charge Indexation calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.1; and
- (b) in respect of any Relevant Year  $t$  commencing on or after 1 April 2020, the total of the amounts set out in the row relating to the Train Operator and the column relating to that year in the Schedule of Fixed Charges, multiplied by the Fixed Track Charge Indexation for that year calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.2;

$FW_t$  means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived in accordance with paragraph 2A;

$V_t$  means an amount in respect of the Variable Usage Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the formula in paragraph 3.1;

$D_t$  means an amount (if any) in respect of the VUC Default Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.3;

$E_t$  means an amount in respect of the Traction Electricity Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the formula in paragraph 4;

$K_t$  means an amount in respect of the Capacity Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is calculated in accordance with paragraph 6;

$EAV_t$  means an amount in respect of the Electrification Asset Usage Charge, calculated in accordance with the formula in paragraph 8; and



$W_t$  means an amount (which shall not be a negative value) in respect of the Network Rail Rebate in Relevant Year  $t$ , calculated in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 7.1.

## 2 Fixed Track Charge Indexation

- 2.1 The Fixed Track Charge Indexation in respect of the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019 shall be derived from the following formula:

$$FTCI_{2019} = \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

$FTCI_{2019}$  means the Fixed Track Charge Indexation in respect of the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019.

- 2.2 The Fixed Track Charge Indexation in respect of any Relevant Year  $t$  commencing on or after 1 April 2020 shall be derived from the following formula:

$$FTCI_t = \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{2018})}{CPI_{2018}} \right) \bullet \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

$FTCI_t$  means the Fixed Track Charge Indexation in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$CPI_{t-1}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year  $t-1$ ; and

$CPI_{2018}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2018.

## 2A Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $FW_t$  means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up in Relevant Year  $t$ , expressed in pounds sterling and rounded to two decimal places, which is derived from the following formula:

$$FW_t = P_t \times F_t$$

where:

$F_t$  means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ; and

$P_t$  means the percentage difference between timetabled traffic and baseline traffic in Relevant Year  $t$ , derived from the formula:

$$P_t = \left( \frac{\text{Timetabled train miles}_t - \text{Baseline timetabled traffic miles}_t}{\text{Baseline timetabled traffic miles}_t} \right) \bullet 100$$

where:

Timetabled train miles<sub>t</sub> means that figure to be taken by Network Rail from the most appropriate system, which system shall be agreed in writing between Network Rail and ORR on or before 31 July 2019; and

Baseline timetabled traffic miles<sub>t</sub> means that figure set out in relation to the Train Operator for the Relevant Year t in the Schedule of Baseline Timetabled Traffic,

subject to the following:

if the term P<sub>t</sub> has a value less than -1% (for example, -1.5% or -5%), the term FW<sub>t</sub> means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up in Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$FW_t = -1\% \times F_t$$

and

if the term P<sub>t</sub> has a value equal to or greater than -1% (for example, -0.9% or 2%), the term FW<sub>t</sub> means an amount in respect of the Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up in Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$FW_t = P_t \times F_t$$

### **3 Variable Usage Charge**

#### **3.1 Variable Usage Charge**

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term V<sub>t</sub> means an amount in respect of the Variable Usage Charge in Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$V_t = \sum V_{it} \bullet UV_{it}$$

where:

V<sub>it</sub> means an amount for vehicle type i for Relevant Year t, expressed in pence per Vehicle Mile and rounded to two decimal places, which is derived from the following formula:

$$V_{it} = V_{it-1} \bullet \left(1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{t-2})}{CPI_{t-2}}\right)$$

where:

$CPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 2.2 above; and

$CPI_{t-2}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-2,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $V_{it}$  shall have, in respect of vehicle type i, the corresponding variable usage charge rate per Vehicle Mile for that vehicle type i set out in the Track Usage Price List, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year  $V_{it-1}$  shall have the same value;

$UV_{it}$  means the actual volume of usage (in Vehicle Miles) in Relevant Year t of vehicle type i (referred to in the Track Usage Price List) operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator; and

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant categories of vehicle types i.

3.2 *Not used*

3.3 *VUC Default Charge*

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $D_t$  means the amount of VUC Default Charge payable in respect of New Specified Equipment in Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$D_t = \Sigma D_{nt} \bullet UD_{nt}$$

where:

$D_{nt}$  means the VUC Default Rate for that New Specified Equipment for Relevant Year t, expressed in pence per Vehicle Mile and rounded to two decimal places, which is derived from the following formula:

$$D_{nt} = D_{nt-1} \bullet \left(1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{t-2})}{CPI_{t-2}}\right)$$

where:

$CPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 2.2 above; and

$CPI_{t-2}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $D_{nt}$  shall have, in respect of New Specified Equipment, the corresponding VUC Default Rate for that New Specified Equipment, multiplied by the

Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year  $D_{nt-1}$  shall have the same value;

$UD_{nt}$  means the actual volume of usage of New Specified Equipment in Vehicle Miles during the VUC Default Period in Relevant Year  $t$  operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator; and

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant New Specified Equipment.

#### 4 Traction Electricity Charge

4.1 For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $E_t$  means an amount in respect of the Traction Electricity Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ , which is derived from the following formula:

$$E_t = E_{tmo} + E_{tme} + E_{tmuAC} + E_{tmuDC}$$

where:

$E_{tmo}$  means an amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.1.2 below;

$E_{tme}$  means an amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.1.3 below;

$E_{tmuAC}$  means an amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.1.4(a) below; and

$E_{tmuDC}$  means an amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.1.4(b) below.

*Circumstances in which calculation to be based on modelled data and circumstances in which calculation to be based on metered data*

4.1.1  $E_{tmo}$  shall be calculated in respect of all trains other than those identified in the table at Appendix 7D, and  $E_{tme}$ ,  $E_{tmuAC}$  and  $E_{tmuDC}$  shall be calculated in respect of the trains identified in the table at Appendix 7D.

*Calculation of modelled consumption (including using PFM Rates)*

4.1.2  $E_{tmo}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmo} = \Sigma E_{tmog}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all Geographic Areas  $g$ , as appropriate;

$E_{tmog}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmog} = \Sigma C_i \bullet EF_{gjt} \bullet UE_{igjt}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant train categories  $i$  (determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1.1 above), New Modelled Trains and tariff bands  $j$ , as appropriate;

$C_i$  means, as appropriate:

(a) -the consumption rate:

(i) in kWh per electrified Train Mile in relation to passenger electric multiple units (using the rate for the relevant number of units); or

(ii) in kWh per electrified kgm in relation to locomotive-hauled units and all freight traffic,

for train category  $i$  shown in the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, taking into account any Regenerative Braking Discount applied in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules or, if a PFM Rate applies in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules, the PFM Rates List; or

(b) -for New Modelled Trains, the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate shown in the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, taking into account any Regenerative Braking Discount applied in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules;

$EF_{gjt}$  means the charge for traction current (in pence per kWh) consumed by railway vehicles operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator in Geographic Area  $g$ , in tariff band  $j$  and in Relevant Year  $t$  as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 19 of the Traction Electricity Rules; and

$UE_{igjt}$  means the actual volume of usage (in electrified Vehicle Miles in relation to passenger electric multiple units or electrified kgm in relation to locomotive-hauled units and all freight traffic), if any, of trains operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator in train category  $i$  and New Modelled Trains operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator, in Geographic Area  $g$ , in tariff band  $j$  and in Relevant Year  $t$ , pursuant to this contract, provided that where train category  $i$  or a New Modelled Train is a Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive operating in a Traction-Train

Compatible situation, it shall be deemed that all mileage (in Vehicle Miles in relation to passenger electric multiple units or kgmt in relation to locomotive-hauled units and all freight traffic), if any, of such trains is electrified.

#### *Calculation of consumption using metered consumption data*

4.1.3  $E_{tme}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tme} = \Sigma E_{tmeg}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all Geographic Areas g, as appropriate;

$E_{tmeg}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmeg} = \Sigma ((CME_{mgjt} \bullet EF_{gjt}) - (RGB_{mgjt} \bullet EF_{gjt}))$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant Metered Trains m (determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1.1 above) and tariff bands j, as appropriate;

$CME_{mgjt}$  means the consumption of electricity (in kWh) by Metered Trains m operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator, as measured by the On-Train Meters or as otherwise determined in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules, in Geographic Area g, tariff band j and in Relevant Year t;

$EF_{gjt}$  means the charge for traction current (in pence per kWh) consumed by railway vehicles operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator in Geographic Area g, in tariff band j and in Relevant Year t as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 19 of the Traction Electricity Rules; and

$RGB_{mgjt}$  means the electricity (in kWh) generated by braking by Metered Trains m operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator, as measured by the On-Train Meters or as otherwise determined in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules, in Geographic Area g, tariff band j and in Relevant Year t.

4.1.4

(a)  $E_{tmuAC}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmuAC} = \Sigma E_{tmugAC}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all Geographic Areas g, as appropriate;

$E_{tmugAC}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmugAC} = \Sigma(CME_{mgjtAC} \bullet EF_{gjt}) \bullet \lambda_{ACg}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant Metered Trains m (determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1.1 above) and tariff bands j, as appropriate;

$CME_{mgjtAC}$  means the consumption of electricity (in kWh) from the AC System by Metered Trains m operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator, as measured by the On-Train Meters or as otherwise determined in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules, in Geographic Area g, tariff band j and in Relevant Year t;

$EF_{gjt}$  means the charge for traction current (in pence per kWh) consumed by railway vehicles operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator in Geographic Area g, in tariff band j and in Relevant Year t as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 19 of the Traction Electricity Rules; and

$\lambda_{ACg}$  means the Network Rail Distribution System Loss Factor for the AC System in Geographic Area g.

(b)  $E_{tmuDC}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmuDC} = \Sigma E_{tmugDC}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all Geographic Areas g, as appropriate;

$E_{tmugDC}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$E_{tmugDC} = \Sigma(CME_{mgjtDC} \bullet EF_{gjt}) \bullet \lambda_{DCg}$$

where:

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant Metered Trains m (determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1.1 above) and tariff bands j, as appropriate;

$CME_{mgjtDC}$  means the consumption of electricity (in kWh) from the DC System by Metered Trains m operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator, as measured by the On-Train Meters or as

otherwise determined in accordance with the Traction Electricity Rules, in Geographic Area g, tariff band j and in Relevant Year t;

$EF_{gjt}$  means the charge for traction current (in pence per kWh) consumed by railway vehicles operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator in Geographic Area g, in tariff band j and in Relevant Year t as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 19 of the Traction Electricity Rules; and

$\lambda_{DCg}$  means the Network Rail Distribution System Loss Factor for the DC System in Geographic Area g.

*Metered Bimodal Electric Multiple Units and Bimodal Locomotives – deemed electrified mileage*

#### 4.1.5

- (a) Where Metered Train m is a Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive, the Train Operator shall, as a minimum, within seven days of the end of each of the third, sixth, tenth and thirteenth Periods, provide to Network Rail the Traction Electricity Usage Occurrence Data for Metered Train m. The Traction Electricity Usage Occurrence Data provided: within seven days of the end of the third Period shall cover Periods one, two and three; within seven days of the end of the sixth Period shall cover Periods four, five and six; within seven days of the end of the tenth Period shall cover Periods seven, eight, nine and ten; and within seven days of the end of the thirteenth Period shall cover Periods eleven, twelve and thirteen.
- (b) Where, after seven days, any Traction Electricity Usage Occurrence Data is missing in respect of any such Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive, all mileage, if any, of such Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator shall be deemed, for billing purposes, to be electrified in Traction-Train Compatible situations and paragraphs 4.1.3 and 4.1.4 shall apply in respect of all such mileage.

*Election to introduce On-Train Metering for a vehicle or vehicle type*

- 4.2 (a) If the Train Operator wishes to propose the introduction of On-Train Metering to measure traction electricity consumption for a vehicle or vehicles of a vehicle type that the Train Operator operates for the purposes of being invoiced by Network Rail for traction electricity, it shall notify Network Rail of any required changes to the contract in connection with that proposal.
- (b) Any notice under sub-paragraph 4.2(a) shall be accompanied by information and evidence in reasonable detail supporting the changes proposed and setting out the



reasons for those changes, and Network Rail shall respond in writing within 56 days of service of any such notice.

- (c) Promptly following any response served by Network Rail under sub-paragraph 4.2(b), the parties shall endeavour to agree whether the contract should be amended in connection with that proposal and, if so, the amendments.
- (d) If the parties agree an amendment to the contract in connection with the proposal referred to in sub-paragraph 4.2(a), that amendment shall take effect only when it has been approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act. Accordingly, as soon as reasonably practicable after any such amendment is agreed, the parties shall ensure that ORR is furnished with such amendment and such information and evidence as it shall require to determine whether or not to approve the amendment.
- (e) Any agreed amendment to the contract in connection with the proposal referred to in sub-paragraph 4.2(a) which is approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act shall apply with effect from the date agreed by the parties.
- (f) If the parties fail to reach agreement within 90 days after service of a notice under sub-paragraph 4.2(a), or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached prior to that date, either party may notify ORR and request that ORR determines the matter. The parties shall, within such timescales as ORR may specify, furnish ORR with such information and evidence as ORR shall require to determine the matter. If a party fails to furnish such information and evidence within the specified timescale, ORR shall be entitled to determine the matter without that information and evidence and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.
- (g) Where ORR determines the matter pursuant to sub-paragraph 4.2(f), it may issue a notice to the parties setting out the amendments to be made to the contract and the date, which may be retrospective, from which they shall take effect.

## **5 Not used**

## **6 Capacity Charge**

In respect of the Relevant Year ending 31 March 2019, the term  $K_t$  means an amount in respect of the Capacity Charge which shall be derived from the formula that was contained in paragraph 6 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 of the version of this contract that was in force up until 31 March 2019. For subsequent Relevant Years,  $K_t$  shall have a value of zero.

## 7 Network Rail Rebate

- 7.1 For the purpose of paragraph 1, the Network Rail Rebate in respect of any Relevant Year t ( $W_t$ ) is an amount (which shall not be a negative value) by way of a return of Track Charges paid in accordance with paragraph 7.5, derived from the following formula:

$$W_t = RA_t \cdot \frac{F_t}{AF_t}$$

where:

- $RA_t$  means the Rebatable Amount declared by Network Rail in relation to Relevant Year t under paragraph 7.2;  
 $F_t$  has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 for Relevant Year t; and  
 $AF_t$  means the Aggregate Fixed Charge in Relevant Year t.

- 7.2 The Rebatable Amount shall be the amount, if any:
- (a) which represents such proportion of Network Rail's total income for Relevant Year t as it reasonably considers that it does not require in order to discharge its obligations under its network licence and any contracts to which it is a party;
  - (b) which Network Rail, acting reasonably, considers it appropriate to rebate as an amount representing a return of Track Charges payable by persons who provide services for the carriage of passengers by railway under the relevant access agreements to which they are parties; and
  - (c) which Network Rail notifies as such to ORR within 9 months after the end of each Relevant Year t.
- 7.3 No amount of Track Charges shall be rebated under this paragraph 7 unless ORR has consented to such rebate.
- 7.4 Without prejudice to the generality of clause 16.3.1, any payment of a Network Rail Rebate (a "**rebate payment**") shall be made on the basis that it is to be treated as exclusive of VAT, so that where and to the extent that the rebate payment is consideration for a supply for VAT purposes Network Rail shall in addition pay to the Train Operator an amount equal to the amount of VAT due in respect of that rebate payment and either:
- (a) the Train Operator shall issue a VAT invoice to Network Rail in respect of the relevant amount; or
  - (b) if the parties so agree and have entered into an applicable self-billing agreement (within the meaning of regulation 13(3A) of the Value Added Tax Regulations 1995 (the "**VAT Regulations**")) that continues in force then Network Rail shall produce for itself a self-billed invoice (within the meaning of regulation 13(3) of the VAT Regulations) in respect of the relevant amount.

- 7.5 If, pursuant to paragraph 7.1, the Train Operator is entitled to payment of a Network Rail Rebate in respect of Relevant Year t, then such payment shall be made by Network Rail to the Train Operator as a lump sum payment within 28 days after the end of the Period in which ORR gives its consent under paragraph 7.3.
- 7.6 If, pursuant to paragraph 7.2, Network Rail notifies ORR of the Rebatable amount in respect of Relevant Year t after this contract has expired or has otherwise been terminated then, notwithstanding the expiration or termination of this contract, paragraph 7.5 shall apply.
- 7.7 If Network Rail has, prior to 31 March 2019 and pursuant to the provisions of this contract in force as at that date, notified ORR of a Rebatable Amount for the Relevant Year ending on that date, then such provisions shall continue to apply to the extent (and only to the extent) necessary to enable determination and payment (where applicable) of a Network Rail Rebate based on that Rebatable Amount.

## 8 Electrification Asset Usage Charge

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $EAV_t$  means an amount for electrification asset usage which is derived from the following formula:

$$\text{Electrification Asset Usage Charge} = \sum EV_{tk} \cdot UV_{tk}$$

where:

$\sum$  means the summation across all route types;  
 $EV_{tk}$  means an amount in respect of the Electrification Asset Usage Charge per electrified Vehicle Mile on route type k for Relevant Year t, expressed in pence per electrified Vehicle Mile and rounded to two decimal places, which is derived from the following formula:

$$EV_{tk} = EV_{t-1k} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{t-2})}{CPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$CPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 2.2 above; and

$CPI_{t-2}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $EV_{tk}$  shall have, in respect of each electrified Vehicle Mile on route type k, the value per electrified Vehicle Mile for the Electrification Asset Usage Charge set out in the Track Usage Price List, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year  $EV_{t-1k}$  shall have the same value; and

$UV_{tk}$  means the actual number of electrified Vehicle Miles on route type k in Relevant Year t operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator. Where the Train Operator operates a Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive, the actual number of electrified Vehicle Miles on route type k in Relevant Year t shall be calculated as follows:

- (i) where the Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive is operating in a Traction-Train Compatible situation and is not a Metered Train m, it shall be deemed that all mileage, if any, of such train is electrified; or
- (ii) where the Bimodal Electric Multiple Unit or Bimodal Locomotive is a Metered Train m, in accordance with paragraph 4.1.5 above.

## **8F Facility Charge**

**8F.1** From the date upon which Network Rail pays the Train Operator for an MS Deliverable, the Deliverable Financing Charge for that MS Deliverable shall accrue (the **MS Accrued DFC**).

### **8F.2**

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from each relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date, the Train Operator shall pay each MS Facility Charge for each relevant MS Deliverable.
- (b) The MS Accrued DFC for each MS Deliverable shall be paid to Network Rail by the Train Operator as part of the MS Facility Charge in accordance with paragraph 8F.3 from each relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date.

**8F.3** The MS Facility Charge due and payable for an MS Deliverable in Relevant Year t shall be calculated as follows:

- (a) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date, zero; and
- (b) from the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$FC_t = (AC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

- (i) **FC<sub>t</sub>** means an amount of the MS Facility Charge in Relevant Year t;
- (ii) **AC<sub>t</sub>** means the amortisation charge calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t = \left[ \frac{FCDValue}{30} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{365} \right]$$

where:

(A) **FCDValue** means:

$$[DPnt + DFC]$$

where:

- 1) **DPnt** means the net amount paid by Network Rail for an MS Deliverable referenced number *n* in Schedule 3 of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement in the Relevant Year *t*, as may be reduced from time to time following any capital payment to Network Rail by the Train Operator in respect of that MS Deliverable in accordance with the terms of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement; and
- 2) **DFC** means the MS Accrued DFC for an MS Deliverable referenced number *n* in Schedule 3 of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement that is not paid to Network Rail prior to the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date;

(B) **TPP<sub>t</sub>** means:

- 1) - in the first year of payment of  $AC_t$ , the number of days from the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year *t*; and
- 2) - in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
  - a) - the date of expiry of the Asset Life; and
  - b) - the end of the Relevant Year *t*;

- (iii) **RC<sub>t</sub>** means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where:

(A) **OB<sub>t</sub>** means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below as appropriate;

(B) **CB<sub>t</sub>** means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below as appropriate;

- 1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date occurs:

(a) **OB<sub>t</sub>** =  $DPnt$

(b) **CB<sub>t</sub>** =  $DPnt - AC_t$

- 2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

(a) **OB<sub>t</sub>** =  $CB_{t-1}$

(b) **CB<sub>t</sub>** =  $OB_t - AC_t$

(C) **ROR** means:

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_t}{365} \right]$$

where:

- 3) **TPP<sub>t</sub>** means:

- a) - in the Relevant Year in which the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the relevant MS Deliverable Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year t; and

- b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
      - i) the expiry of the Asset Life; and
      - ii) the end of the Relevant Year t;
  - 2) **AROR** means the applicable rate of annual return which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre tax rate of return for the investment framework.
  - (iv) **RPI<sub>t-1</sub>** means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year<sub>t-1</sub> and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the date that Network Rail pays for an MS Deliverable occurs.

**8G MS Incremental MRR Charge [NOT USED]**

**8H EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge**

8H.1 (a) From the date upon which Network Rail pays the Train Operator for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable up to and including the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date, the EG3 Deliverable Financing Charge for that EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable shall accrue (the **EG3 Phase 1 Accrued DFC**).

(b) From the day after the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date or, if later, the date upon which Network Rail pays the Train Operator for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable until the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date, the EG3 Phase 1 Additional Deliverable Financing Charge for that EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable shall accrue (the **EG3 Phase 1 Additional Accrued DFC**).

**8H.2**

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date, the Train Operator shall pay each EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge for each EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable.
- (b) The EG3 Phase 1 Accrued DFC and the EG3 Phase 1 Additional Accrued DFC for each EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable shall be paid to Network Rail by the

Train Operator as part of the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge in accordance with paragraph 8H.3 from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date.

8H.3 The EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge due and payable for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:

- (a) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date, zero; and
- (b) from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$FC_t^1 = (AC_t^1 + RC_t^1 + AC_t^a + RC_t^a) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_t - 1}{100} \right]$$

where:

- (i)  $FC_t^1$  means an amount of the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- (ii)  $AC_t^1$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t^1 = \left[ \frac{FCDValue}{EG3P1Term} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t^1}{365} \right]$$

where:

- (A) **FCD Value** means:

$$[DPnt^1 + DFC^1]$$

where:

- 1)  $DPnt^1$  means the net amount paid by Network Rail for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable referenced number  $n$  in Schedule 2 of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement, as may be reduced from time to time following any capital payment to Network Rail by the Train Operator in respect of that EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable in accordance with the terms of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement; and



- 2)  $DFC^1$  means the EG3 Phase 1 Accrued DFC for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable referenced number  $n$  in Schedule 2 of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement that is not paid to Network Rail prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date;
- (B) EG3P1 Term means the period (expressed in whole and fractions of a year (rounded to the nearest month) over which the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge is paid for, being the period from the EG3 Phase 1 Revised Completion Date to the date 30 years after the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable Change Date;

(C)  $TPP_t^1$  means:

- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t^1$  the number of days from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
- (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
- a) the date of expiry of the EG3 Asset Life; and
  - b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

(iii)  $RC_t^1$  means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t^1 = \left( \frac{OB_t^1 + CB_t^1}{2} \right) \times ROR^1$$

where:

- (A)  $OB_t^1$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate);
- (B)  $CB_t^1$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate);
- 1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date occurs:

$$a) \quad OB_t^1 = DPnt^1$$

$$b) \quad CB_t^1 = DPnt^1 - AC_t^1$$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

$$a) \quad OB_t^1 = CB_{t-1}^1$$

$$b) \quad CB_t^1 = OB_t^1 - AC_t^1$$

(C) ROR<sup>1</sup> means:

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_t^1}{365} \right]$$

where:

1)  $TPP_t^1$  means:

a) in the Relevant Year in which the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year t; and

b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:

i) the expiry of the EG3 Asset Life;  
and

ii) the end of the Relevant Year t;

2) AROR means the applicable rate of annual return which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre-tax rate of return for the investment framework;

(iv)  $AC_t^a$  means the additional accrued DFC amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t^a = \left[ \frac{ADFC}{ADFC \text{ Term}} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t^a}{365} \right]$$

where:

- (A) ADFC means the EG3 Phase 1 Additional Accrued DFC for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable referenced number *n* in Schedule 2 of the EG3 Asset Purchase Agreement that is not paid to Network Rail prior to the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date;
- (B) ADFC Term means the period (expressed in whole and fractions of a year (rounded to the nearest month)) over which the EG3 Phase 1 Additional Accrued DFC is paid for, being the period from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date to 31 December 2021;
- (C)  $TPP_t^a$  means:
  - (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t^a$  the number of days from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year *t*; and
  - (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - a) the date of expiry of the ADFC Term and
    - b) the end of the Relevant Year *t*;

- (v)  $RC_t^a$  means the additional accrued DFC return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t^a = \left( \frac{OB_t^a + CB_t^a}{2} \right) \times ROR_t^a$$

where:

- (A)  $OB_t^a$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate);

(B)  $CB_t^a$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate);

1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date occurs:

a)  $OB_t^a = ADFC$

b)  $CB_t^a = ADFC - AC_t^a$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

a)  $OB_t^a = CB_{t-1}^a$

b)  $CB_t^a = OB_t^a - AC_t^a$

(C)  $ROR^a$  means:

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_t^a}{365} \right]$$

where:

1)  $TPP_t^a$  means:

a) in the Relevant Year in which the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year t; and

b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:

i) the expiry of the ADFC Term; and

ii) the end of the Relevant Year t;

- 2) AROR means the applicable rate of annual return which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre-tax rate of return for the investment framework; and
- (vi)  $RPI_{t-1}$  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year $_{t-1}$  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the date that Network Rail pays for an EG3 Phase 1 Deliverable occurs.

## **8I The EG3 Phase 2 Facility Charges plus the Adjustment Sum**

### **8I.1 The Water Eaton Facility Charge**

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date until the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date the Train Operator shall pay the Water Eaton Facility Charge.
- (b) The Water Eaton Facility Charge due and payable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:
- (i) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date, zero; and
- (ii) from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$WFC_t = (AC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$WFC_t$  means an amount of the Water Eaton Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$AC_t$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t = \left[ \frac{WCS}{30} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- (A)  $WCS$  is the Water Eaton Contribution Sum;
- (B)  $TAP$  is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Relevant Year  $t$ , then 366;
- (C)  $TPP_t$  means
- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t$  the number of days from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
  - (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - a) the date which is 30 years after the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date; and
    - b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$

$RC_t$  means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t^2 = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where

- (A)  $OB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate) (being the opening balance for the Relevant Year)
- (B)  $CB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate) (being the closing balance for the Relevant Year);
- 1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Facility

Charge Date occurs:

a)  $OB_t = WCS$

b)  $CB_t = WCS - AC_t$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

a)  $OB_t = CB_{t-1}$

b)  $CB_t = OB_t - AC_t$

(C)  $ROR$  means

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_1^t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

1)  $TPP_1^t$  means

(a) in the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ; and

(b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:

i) the date which is 30 years after the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date; and

ii) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

2)  $AROR$  means the applicable pre-tax rate of annual return for the investment framework applicable in respect of the control period commencing 1 April 2014 as determined by the ORR;

(ii)  $RPI_{t-1}$

means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year  $t-1$  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate is issued.

## 8I.2 Oxford Facility Charge

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rationed for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the Oxford Facility Charge Date until the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date the Train Operator shall pay the Oxford Facility Charge.
- (b) The Oxford Facility Charge due and payable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:
- (i) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the Oxford Facility Charge Date, zero; and
- (ii) from the Oxford Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$OFC_t = (AC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$OFC_t$

means an amount of the Oxford Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$AC_t$

means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t = \left[ \frac{OCS}{30} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- (A)  $OCS$  is the Oxford Contribution Sum;
- (B)  $TAP$  is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Relevant Year  $t$ , then 366;
- (C)  $TPP_t$  means
- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t$  the number of days from the Oxford



Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and

- (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
  - a) the date which is 30 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and
  - b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$

$RC_t$

means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where

(A)  $OB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate) (being the opening balance for the Relevant Year)

(B)  $CB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate) (being the closing balance for the Relevant Year);

1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs:

a)  $OB_t = OCS$

b)  $CB_t = OCS - AC_t$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

a)  $OB_t = CB_{t-1}$

$$b) \quad CB_t = OB_t - AC_t$$

(C)  $ROR$  means

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_1^t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- 1)  $TPP_1^t$  means
  - (a) in the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the Oxford Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
  - (b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - i) the date which is 30 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and
    - ii) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- 2)  $AROR$  means the applicable pre-tax rate of annual return for the investment framework applicable in respect of the control period commencing 1 April 2014 as determined by the ORR;

- (ii)  $RPI_{t-1}$  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year  $t-1$  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Works Completion Certificate is issued.

### 8I.3 Adjustment Sum

- (a) On the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, an adjustment sum shall be determined as follows:

$$\text{Adjustment Sum} = (WEFC + OFC) - (FWFC + FOFC)$$

where:

*WEFC* is the amount of the Water Eaton Facility Charge paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail pursuant to paragraph 8I.1 in respect of the period from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date until the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date;

*OFC* is the amount of the Oxford Facility Charge paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail pursuant to paragraph 8I.2 in respect of the period from the Oxford Facility Charge Date until the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date;

*FWFC* is the amount of the Water Eaton Facility Charge that would have been payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail pursuant to paragraph 8I.1 in respect of the period from the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date until the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date had the Water Eaton Facility Charge been calculated using the Water Eaton Final Contribution Sum;

*FOFC* is the amount of the Oxford Facility Charge that would have been payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail pursuant to paragraph 8I.2 in respect of the period from the Oxford Facility Charge Date until Final Contribution Sum Determination Date had the Oxford Facility Charge been calculated using the Oxford Final Contribution Sum;

- (b) Within 90 days of the determination of the Adjustment Sum pursuant to paragraph 8I.3(a) above, an amount that is equal to the Adjustment Sum shall be paid by the Train Operator to Network Rail where the Adjustment Sum is a negative amount and by Network Rail to Train Operator where the Adjustment Sum is a positive amount.

#### 8I.4 The Water Eaton Final Facility Charge

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date the Train Operator shall pay the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge.
- (b) The Water Eaton Final Facility Charge due and payable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:
  - (i) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, zero; and
  - (ii) from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$WFFC_t = (WAC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$WFFC_t$  means an amount of the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$WAC_t$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$WAC_t = \left[ \frac{WFS}{30} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- (A)  $WFS$  is the amount that is equal to the Water Eaton Final Contribution Sum.
- (B)  $TAP$  is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Relevant Year  $t$ , then 366
- (C)  $TPP_t$  means
  - (1) in the first year of payment of  $WAC_t$ , the number of days from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
  - (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:

- a) the date which 30 years after the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date; and
- b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$

$RC_t$

means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where

(A)  $OB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate) (being the opening balance for the Relevant Year)

(B)  $CB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate) (being the closing balance for the Relevant Year);

1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge Date occurs:

a)  $OB_t = WFS$

b)  $CB_t = WFS - AC_t$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

a)  $OB_t = CB_{t-1}$

b)  $CB_t = OB_t - AC_t$

(C)  $ROR$  means

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_1^t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- 1)  $TPR_1^t$  means
- (a) in the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date to the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
  - (b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - i) the date which 30 years after the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date; and
    - ii) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- 2)  $AROR$  means the applicable pre-tax rate of annual return for the investment framework applicable in respect of the control period commencing 1 April 2014 as determined by the ORR;

- (ii)  $RPI_{t-1}$  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year  $t-1$  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Works Completion Certificate is issued.

#### 8L.5 Oxford Final Facility Charge

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date the Train Operator shall pay the Oxford Final Facility Charge.

- (b) The Oxford Final Facility Charge due and payable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:
- (i) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the Oxford Final Facility Charge Date, zero; and
  - (ii) from the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$OFFC_t = (AC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$OFFC_t$  means an amount of the Oxford Final Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$AC_t$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t = \left[ \frac{OFS}{30} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

(A)  $OFS$  is the amount that is equal to the Oxford Final Contribution Sum;

(B)  $TAP$  is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Relevant Year  $t$ , then 366;

(C)  $TPP_t$  means

- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t$  the number of days from the Oxford Final Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
- (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
  - a) the date which is 30 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and

- b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$

$RC_t$  means the return charge derived from the following formula:

$$RC_t = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where

(A)  $OB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate) (being the opening balance for the Relevant Year)

(B)  $CB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate) (being the closing balance for the Relevant Year);

1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs:

a)  $OB_t = OFS$

b)  $CB_t = OFS - AC_t$

2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:

a)  $OB_t = CB_{t-1}$

b)  $CB_t = OB_t - AC_t$

(C)  $ROR$  means

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_1^t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

1)  $TPP_1^t$  means



- (a) in the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the Oxford Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
- (b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
  - i) the date which is 30 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and
  - ii) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

2) **AROR** means the applicable pre-tax rate of annual return for the investment framework applicable in respect of the control period commencing 1 April 2014 as determined by the ORR;

(ii)  **$RPI_{t-1}$**  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year $_{t-1}$  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Works Completion Certificate is issued.”

## 8J Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge

8J.1 During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the Oxford Facility Charge Date until the end of the Contract, the Train Operator shall pay each Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge for the Wolvercot Tunnel Works.

8J.1 The Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge due and payable for the Wolvercot Tunnel Works in each Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:

- (a) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the Oxford Facility Charge Date, zero; and

- (b) from the Oxford Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$WOCT_t = (AC_t + RC_t) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$WOCT_t$  means an amount of the Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$AC_t$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t = \left[ \frac{WOCTS}{10} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t}{TAP} \right]$$

where

(A)  $WOCTS$  is the amount that is equal to the Wolvercot Tunnel Capital Sum;

(B)  $TAP$  is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Relevant Year  $t$ , then 366;

(C)  $TPP_t$  means

- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t$  the number of days from the Oxford Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year  $t$ ; and
- (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
  - a) the date which is 10 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and
  - b) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$

$RC_t$  means the return charge derived from the following

formula:

$$RC_t = \left( \frac{OB_t + CB_t}{2} \right) \times ROR$$

where

- (A)  $OB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate) (being the opening balance for the Relevant Year)
- (B)  $CB_t$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate) (being the closing balance for the Relevant Year);
- 1) in relation to the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs:
    - a)  $OB_t = WOCTS$
    - b)  $CB_t = WOCTS - AC_t$
  - 2) in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:
    - a)  $OB_t = CB_{t-1}$
    - b)  $CB_t = OB_t - AC_t$
- (C)  $ROR$  means

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_1^*}{TAP} \right]$$

where

- 1)  $TPP_1^*$  means
  - (a) in the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the Oxford Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year t; and

- (b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
      - i) the date which is 10 years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date; and
      - ii) the end of the Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- 2) **AROR** means the applicable pre-tax rate of annual return for the investment framework applicable in respect of the control period commencing 1 April 2014 as determined by the ORR;
- (ii) **RPI <sub>$t-1$</sub>**  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year <sub>$t-1$</sub>  and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Works Completion Certificate is issued.

## 8K EG3 Incremental MRR Charge

8K.1 During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from:

- (i) in respect to any EG3 Asset relating to EG3 Phase 1, the date that such EG3 Asset is Taken into Use until the date that is thirty years after such EG3 Asset is Taken into Use;
- (ii) in respect of any Water Eaton Works, the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date until the date that is thirty years after the Water Eaton Facility Charge Date; and
- (iii) in respect of any Oxford Works, the Oxford Facility Charge Date until the period that is thirty years after the Oxford Facility Charge Date,

Network Rail shall levy, and the Train Operator shall pay, each EG3 Incremental MRR Charge as calculated in accordance with the following formulas:

(A) in relation to EG3 Phase 1:

$$IOM_t = X \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$IOM_t$

means the amount of the Phase 1 Incremental MRR Charge payable in Relevant Year t;

$X$

means the Incremental MRR Charge based on the EG3 Assets in respect of EG3 Phase 1 that are Taken into Use as calculated in accordance with paragraphs 8K.3 and 8K.4; and

$RPI_{t-1}$

means the percentage change (whether positive or negative value) between the between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year<sub>t-1</sub> and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the first EG3 Asset relating to EG3 Phase 1 is Taken into Use;

(B) in relation to the Water Eaton Works:

$$WIM_t = X_w \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$WIM_t$

means the amount of the Water Eaton Incremental MRR Charge payable in

Relevant Year t;

$X_w$

means the Incremental MRR Charge relating to the Water Eaton Works as calculated in accordance with paragraphs 8K.3 and 8K.4; and

$RPI_{t-1}$

means the percentage change (whether positive or negative value) between the between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year<sub>t-1</sub> and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Water Eaton Completion Certificate is issued;

(C) in relation to the Oxford Works:

$$OIM_t = X_o \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

$OIM_t$

means the amount of the Oxford Incremental MRR Charge payable in Relevant Year t;

$X_o$

means the Incremental MRR Charge relating to the Oxford Works as calculated in accordance with paragraphs 8K.3 and 8K.4; and

$RPI_{t-1}$

means the percentage change (whether positive or negative value) between the between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year<sub>t-1</sub> and the index

published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the Oxford Completion Certificate is issued;

8K.2 The first Phase 1 Incremental MRR Charge shall be made in respect of the Period in which the first Taken into Use of an EG3 Asset relating to EG3 Phase 1 falls; and

8K.3 In relation to the EG3 Assets, the Incremental MRR Charge shall be agreed between the parties and approved by the ORR in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 8K.4.

8K.4 For each of EG3 Phase 1 and EG3 Phase 2:

(a) the Contract shall have effect:

(i) with the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications; and

(ii) from the date,

specified by the ORR in a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications;

(b) a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications may have retrospective effect;

(c) in respect of the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications:

(i) the parties shall, within the period between the relevant Start Date and the relevant Backstop Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications;

(ii) each party shall ensure that:

(A) - such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and

(B) - the ORR's Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and

(C) - the negotiations shall not continue after the relevant Backstop Date;

(d) if the parties fail to agree the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications on or before the relevant Backstop Date:

- (i) the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
  - (ii) Network Rail shall within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration;
- (e) if a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 8K.4(d), the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:
  - (i) determine the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications in accordance with the ORR's Criteria and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to establish the requisite Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications;
  - (ii) provide reasons for his award; and
  - (iii) state the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, give the reasons;
- (f) not later than seven (7) days after the relevant Backstop Date or the conclusion of arbitration, as the case may be, the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:
  - (i) stating the reasons for the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications;
  - (ii) stating the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
  - (iii) giving such other information as the ORR may have requested;
- (g) if the ORR is satisfied with the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 8K.4(f), and it gives a notice to that effect, such modifications shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 8K.4(a);
- (h) if the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications, it may:
  - (i) require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 8K.4(c) to 8K.4(f) for agreeing the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
  - (ii) following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications itself and give a notice specifying such Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications;



- (i) within ten (10) Working Days of the date of any notice referred to in paragraph 8K.4(a) the parties shall make such adjustments to the payments made under this paragraph 8K (EG3 Incremental MRR Charge) as are necessary to ensure that the parties are in the financial position in respect of the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications as if those modifications had had effect from the date specified in the notice given under paragraph 8K.4(a);
- (j) if the ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications or proposed Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications:
  - (i) the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by the ORR; and
  - (ii) if that party fails timeously to do so, the ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect;
- (k) any Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications shall:
  - (i) take account, where relevant, of the 'Criteria and procedures for the approval of track access contracts' published by the ORR and dated 21 August 2009; and
  - (ii) take account of the duties of the ORR under section 4 of the Act;
- (l) in relation to the procedure in paragraphs 8K.4(c) – 8K.4(i) for the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):
  - (i) such procedure may be modified by the ORR by a Notice of Procedural Modifications; but
  - (ii) the ORR may only give a Notice of Procedural Modifications if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in section 4 of the Act or if it is requested by both parties;
- (m) in this paragraph 8K.4:
  - (i) where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by the ORR, it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and

- (ii) any notice given by the ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes;
- (n) not later than twenty eight (28) days after the giving of a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications, Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and the ORR a copy of this Contract containing such Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications; and
- (o) nothing in this paragraph 8K.4 affects the right of either party to approach and obtain from the ORR guidance in relation to the Relevant Schedule 7 Modifications.

## 8L MS Additional Facility Charge

8L.1 From the date upon which Network Rail pays the Train Operator for an MS Additional Facility Deliverable, the MS Deliverable Financing Charge for that MS Deliverable shall accrue (the **MS Additional Accrued DFC**).

8L.2

- (a) During each Relevant Year (and, where relevant, pro-rated for each day of any period of this Contract comprising less than a full Relevant Year) from the MS Additional Deliverable Facility Charge Date, the Train Operator shall pay the MS Additional Facility Charge.
- (b) The MS Accrued DFC for the MS Additional Facility Charge shall be paid to Network Rail by the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 8L.3.

8L.3 The MS Additional Facility Charge due and payable for an MS Additional Deliverable in Relevant Year  $t$  shall be calculated as follows:

- (a) in each Relevant Year (or part year) prior to the relevant MS Additional Facility Charge Date, zero; and
- (b) from the MS Additional Facility Charge Date, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$FC_t^m = (AC_t^m + RC_t^m) \times \left[ 1 + \frac{RPI_{t-1}}{100} \right]$$

where:

- (i)  $FC_t^m$  means an amount of the MS Additional Facility Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

- (ii)  $AC_t^m$  means the amortisation charge, calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$AC_t^m = \left[ \frac{FCDValue}{MSAC Term} \right] \times \left[ \frac{TPP_t^m}{365} \right]$$

where:

- (A) **FCDValue** means:

$$[DPnt^m + DFC^m]$$

where:

- 1)  $DPnt^m$  means the net amount paid by Network Rail for the MS Additional Deliverable referenced in Schedule 3 of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement, as may be reduced from time to time following any capital payment to Network Rail by the Train Operator in respect of that MS Additional Deliverable in accordance with the terms of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement; and
  - 2)  $DFC^m$  means the MS Additional Facility Charge Accrued DFC for the MS Additional Deliverable referenced number in Schedule 3 of the MS Asset Purchase Agreement that is not paid to Network Rail prior to the MS Additional Facility Charge Date;
- (B) **MSAC Term** means the period (expressed in whole and fractions of a year (rounded to the nearest month)) over which the MS Additional Deliverable is paid for, being the period from the MS Additional Facility Charge Date to 31 December 2021;
- (C)  $TPP_t^m$  means:

- (1) in the first year of payment of  $AC_t^m$  the number of days from the MS Additional Facility Charge Date to the end of Relevant Year t; and
  - (2) in all subsequent years, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - a) the date of expiry of the MSAC Term; and
    - b) the end of the Relevant Year t;
- (iii)  $RC_t^m$  means the return charge derived from the following formula

$$RC_t^m = \left( \frac{OB_t^m + CB_t^m}{2} \right) \times ROR_t^m$$

where:

- (A)  $OB_t^m$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a) below (as appropriate);
  - (B)  $CB_t^m$  means the sum derived from the formulas in paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b) below (as appropriate);
- 1) - in relation to the Relevant Year in which the MS Additional Facility Charge Date occurs:
    - a)  $OB_t^m = DPnt^m$
    - b)  $CB_t^m = DPnt^m - AC_t^m$
  - 2) - in relation to each subsequent Relevant Year:
    - a)  $OB_t^m = CB_{t-1}^m$
    - b)  $CB_t^m = OB_t^m - AC_t^m$
- (C)  $ROR^m$  means:

$$\left[ \frac{AROR \times TPP_t^m}{365} \right]$$

where:

- 1)  $TPP_t^m$  means:
  - a) in the Relevant Year in which the MS Additional Facility Charge Date occurs, the number of days from the MS Additional Facility Charge Date to the end of the Relevant Year t; and
  - b) in each subsequent Relevant Year, the number of days from the start of the Relevant Year to the earlier of:
    - i) the expiry of the MSAC Term; and
    - ii) - the end of the Relevant Year t;
- 2) AROR means the applicable rate of annual return which is 0.06 in accordance with the ORR's CP4 pre-tax rate of return for the investment framework; and
- (iv)  $RPI_{t-1}$  means the percentage change (whether of a positive or negative value) between the Retail Prices Index published or determined with respect to November in Relevant Year<sub>t-1</sub> and the index published or determined with respect to November in the Relevant Year before the Relevant Year in which the date that Network Rail pays for the MS Additional Deliverable occurs.

**9 Bilateral supplements to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List and Track Usage Price List**

- 9.1 Where the Train Operator intends to use New Specified Equipment on the Network, it shall where reasonably practicable inform Network Rail in writing of the date or likely date from which it intends to do so.
- 9.2 Where the Train Operator uses New Specified Equipment on the Network, the Train Operator shall pay Network Rail the relevant VUC Default Charge during the VUC Default Period.
- 9.2A Where the Train Operator uses a New Modelled Train on the Network, Network Rail shall apply the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate in order to calculate the Traction Electricity Charge for the purposes of paragraph 4.1.2 above, during the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate Period.
- 9.3 No supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List or Track Usage Price List shall have effect unless it has been:
- (a) agreed between the parties and ORR has consented to it; or
  - (b) determined by ORR.
- 9.4 Either the Train Operator or Network Rail shall be entitled to propose that:
- (a) the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List be supplemented as necessary to include a rate in respect of a new train category; or
  - (b) the Track Usage Price List be supplemented as necessary to include a new vehicle type and corresponding rate.
- 9.5 Any proposal of a kind referred to in paragraph 9.4 shall be made by notice to the other party and shall be accompanied by a specification of the proposal in reasonable detail and the reasons for it. The parties shall thereafter seek to agree in good faith the necessary supplement to the list in question.
- 9.6 Either party may request from the other such information that it reasonably requires in connection with the proposal and the party from whom the information was requested shall use reasonable endeavours to provide this information promptly.
- 9.7 Where the parties agree to a supplement following a proposal under paragraph 9.4, they shall request ORR's consent to it and provide such information as ORR reasonably requires in order to decide whether to give its consent.
- 9.8 If the parties fail to reach agreement within 45 days of the date of the notice given under paragraph 9.5, at any point thereafter either party shall be entitled to refer the matter to ORR for determination.

- 9.9 Following a reference to ORR under paragraph 9.8, the parties shall, within such timescales as ORR may reasonably specify, furnish ORR with such information and evidence as ORR shall reasonably require to determine the matter. If a party fails to furnish such information and evidence within the specified timescale, ORR shall be entitled to determine the matter without that information and evidence and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.
- 9.10 ORR may:
- (a) consent to any supplement that is agreed by the parties and submitted to it under paragraph 9.7, or following consultation with the parties, determine that a different supplement should apply; or
  - (b) following a referral to ORR under paragraph 9.8, determine the supplement that should apply.
- 9.11 In the case of a supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, the supplement shall have effect from such date as ORR shall determine by notice to the parties, provided that such date shall not be a date falling prior to the start of the Relevant Year in which ORR consented to or determined the supplement.
- 9.12 In the case of a supplement to the Track Usage Price List, the supplement shall have retrospective effect from the first day of the VUC Default Period.
- 9.13 Following ORR's consent or determination under paragraph 9.10 Network Rail shall:
- (a) apply the supplement from the date in accordance with paragraph 9.11 or 9.12 above as applicable; and
  - (b) within 28 days of the date of ORR's consent or determination:
    - (i) issue any adjusting invoice or credit note to the Train Operator –
    - (A) in the case of a supplement to the Track Usage Price List, this will reflect the difference between the amount paid by the Train Operator for the VUC Default Charge during the VUC Default Period and the amount that it would have paid during the VUC Default Period in respect of the Variable Usage Charge had the supplement been in place at the time the Train Operator first used the relevant railway vehicle on the Network;
    - (B) in the case of a supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, this will reflect the difference between: (i) the amount paid by the Train Operator in respect of any New Modelled Train to which the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate has been applied during the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate Reconciliation Period and; (ii) the amount that it would have paid during the Traction Electricity Modelled Default Rate Reconciliation Period in

respect of the Traction Electricity Charge had the supplement been in place at the start of that period;

and

- (ii) publish on its website details of the supplement alongside the details of any other such supplements to which ORR has consented or determined pursuant to this or any other track access contract to which Network Rail is a party.

9.14 Any supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List or Track Usage Price List which ORR has consented to or determined pursuant to a passenger track access contract previously held by the Train Operator shall also apply to this contract.

## **10 Payment of Track Charges and other sums due under the contract**

### *10.1 Payment of Track Charges and other sums due under the contract*

- (a) Save where the contract provides otherwise, the Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of:
  - (i) the Variable Usage Charge;
  - (ii) the Traction Electricity Charge;
  - (iii) the Capacity Charge;
  - (iv) the Electrification Asset Usage Charge;
  - (v) the VUC Default Charge;
  - (vi) the Fixed Track Charge Wash-Up; and
  - (vii) any other sums which have fallen due in accordance with any provision of this contract,

attributable to any Period as invoiced by Network Rail on or after expiry of each such Period within 21 days of the invoice date or 28 days after the end of the Period, whichever is later.

- (b) The Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of that part of the Fixed Track Charge attributable to any Period as invoiced by Network Rail on or after the expiry of each such Period within seven days of the invoice date or seven days after the end of the Period, whichever is later.
- (c) Any invoice issued by Network Rail under paragraph 18.5 of the Traction Electricity Rules (relating to modelled and actual rates of electricity consumption) shall be payable by the Train Operator within 21 days of the relevant invoice date.



- (d) Not used.
- (e) The Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of that part of the MS Facility Charge and the MS Additional Facility Charge due and payable in respect of any Period as invoiced by Network Rail on or after expiry of each such Period within twenty eight (28) days of the invoice date or ten (10) Working Days after the end of the Period, whichever is later.
- (f) The Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of that part of the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge, the Water Eaton Facility Charge, the Oxford Facility Charge, the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge, the Oxford Final Facility Charge and the Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge due and payable in respect of any Period as invoiced by Network Rail on or after the expiry of each such Period within twenty-eight (28) days of the invoice date or ten (10) Working Days after the end of the Period, whichever is later.

## *10.2 Train Consist Data*

Network Rail shall calculate the Variable Charges payable by the Train Operator in respect of each Period using the Train Consist Data supplied by the Train Operator and, to the extent such Train Consist Data is not available to Network Rail, the Default Train Consist Data.

## *10.3 Invoices and right to object to invoices*

- (a) Network Rail will notify the Train Operator on a weekly basis of the train movements for which Default Train Consist Data has been used to establish the Variable Charges payable by the Train Operator. At either party's request, the parties shall consult with a view to substituting Train Consist Data for Default Train Consist Data but such consultation shall not delay the issue by Network Rail of the invoice for the Variable Charges in respect of the Period concerned.
- (b) For each Period, Network Rail shall be entitled to invoice the Train Operator for Variable Charges in respect of any and all train movements operated by the Train Operator during that Period based on either:
  - (i) Train Consist Data provided by the Train Operator in respect of any train movement at or prior to the time that such train movement is completed; or
  - (ii) Train Consist Data agreed by the parties under paragraph 10.3(a) in respect of any train movement; or
  - (iii) Train Consist Data provided by the Train Operator in respect of any train movement (other than any train movement where the Specified Equipment used in operating the relevant movement is loco hauled) by the end of the day on which such train movement has been completed,

or (to the extent that (i) or (ii) or (iii) above do not apply) Default Train Consist Data. Each such invoice will be payable in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 10.1.

- (c) Either party shall be entitled, at any time prior to the later of 2359 hours on the fourteenth day following the expiration of the relevant Period and seven days following receipt by the Train Operator of the relevant invoice or credit note, to notify the other that it objects to any Train Consist Data (including, where applicable, the use of Default Train Consist Data) on which the whole or any part of the Variable Charges included in the relevant invoice or credit note are based and any such notice shall specify in reasonable detail what that party believes to be the Train Consist Data for the relevant train movement(s) (“**notice of objection**”). In the absence of any notice of objection being served within such time the Train Consist Data used in the relevant invoice or credit note shall be final and binding on the parties. The Train Operator shall supply the data to Network Rail in the format:

Train ID	Start Date & Time	Train slot origin	Train slot destination	Train Consist (actual): Specified Equipment used

- (d) The parties shall seek to agree the Train Consist Data specified in any notice of objection and any consequential financial adjustment required to the relevant invoice or credit note. If the parties are unable to agree such Train Consist Data within 14 days following receipt of a notice of objection, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.
- (e) Within 14 days of any Train Consist Data being agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 10.3(d), Network Rail shall, if any consequential or financial adjustment of the relevant invoice is required, issue a further invoice to, or (as the case may be) a credit note in favour of, the Train Operator in the amount of the relevant adjustment. The invoice or credit note shall be payable at the same time as the invoice for Variable Charges for the relevant Period or, if issued later than 21 days after the end of the relevant Period, within seven days after the date of its issue.
- (f) The actual volume of usage used to calculate any supplementary amount payable under paragraph 18 of the Traction Electricity Rules shall be established on the basis of the Train Consist Data and the Default Train Consist Data applied in calculating the Variable Charges for each of the Periods in Relevant Year t as adjusted in accordance with paragraph 10.3(d) on or before 90 days after the end of Relevant Year t.

- (g) Where, as a result of any invoice or credit note issued pursuant to paragraph 10.3, any sum of money which has been paid shall become repayable or any sum of money which has been unpaid shall become payable the party to whom such sum shall be paid shall be paid or allowed interest at the Default Interest Rate on such sum from the date when it (if repayable) was paid or the date when such sum (if payable) ought to have been paid until the date of payment or repayment.

#### *10.4 Unrepresentative Train Consist Data*

- (a) If at any time during this contract either party considers the Default Train Consist Data specified in Appendix 7C is not representative of the Train Operator's Services and in particular, but without limitation, the type(s) of railway vehicles then in use and the regular number of carriages forming part of those railway vehicles in the operation of its Services, either party shall be entitled on written notice to the other to request that the Default Train Consist Data be amended. Any such request shall specify in reasonable detail the grounds for the request and the proposed amendments to the Default Train Consist Data.
- (b) The parties shall endeavour to reach agreement on any amendments to the Default Train Consist Data within 21 days of the date of the request referred to in paragraph 10.4(a) and if the parties are unable to agree such amendments within such time period, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.
- (c) Upon the earlier of agreement between the parties or determination by a relevant ADRR Forum, the parties shall notify ORR of the proposed amendments to the Default Train Consist Data and, subject to ORR not objecting to the proposed amendments within 14 days (the "**14 day period**") of receipt of the notification by ORR, such amendments shall take effect from the first day of the next Period following the earlier of ORR confirming its consent to the proposed amendments and the expiry of the 14 day period. If ORR objects to the proposed amendments within the 14 day period, the parties shall endeavour to reach agreement with ORR on the appropriate amendments, if any, to the Default Train Consist Data which shall then take effect on the first day of the Period next following that in which agreement is reached.

#### *10.5 Disputed amounts repayment and interest rate*

- (a) Where a party wishes to contest any invoice issued to it under this Schedule 7 (including any invoice in respect of Track Charges) it shall, within 14 days of receipt of the invoice, notify the other party in writing of the amount which is in dispute but shall pay the full amount of the invoice, including the disputed amount, in accordance with the terms of the invoice.
- (b) Where a party has given notice under paragraph 10.5(a) that it disputes part of any invoiced amount:

- (i) payment of such sum shall be without prejudice to the determination of whether such sum is properly due or not; and
  - (ii) if it is subsequently determined that the disputed sum, or part of it, was not properly due the payee shall repay the disputed sum, or relevant part, to the payer together with interest (to accrue daily and be compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the date of payment until the actual date of repayment.
- (c) For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this paragraph 10.5 shall apply to any sums which have fallen due in accordance with Part 3A of this Schedule 7.

### **PART 3: ROUTE-LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM**

1. For the purposes of the calculation and payment of any Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share for the Relevant Year ending 31 March 2019, Part 3 and Appendix 7A and Appendix 7B of Schedule 7 of the version of this contract that was in force up until 31 March 2019 shall continue to apply.

### **PART 3A: ENGLISH & WELSH GRANT DILUTION**

#### **1 Grant Amounts**

##### *1.1 Grant Amounts, Basic Amounts and Payment Dates*

For the purposes of this Part 3A:

- (a) the Basic Amount, in respect of any Payment Date, is the amount which is notified by Network Rail to the Secretary of State in respect of that Payment Date, excluding any amounts notified by Network Rail which: (i) are not needed by Network Rail in respect of that Payment Date, or (ii) would cause the total of the Basic Amounts so notified for the Relevant Year in which the Payment Date falls to exceed the value of the Grant Amount for that Relevant Year;
- (b) the Grant Amount, in respect of any Relevant Year, is the network grant amount set out in Table E2B as the annual amount to be paid in that Relevant Year by the Secretary of State to Network Rail by way of grant under s6 of the Railways Act 2005, as adjusted from time to time in accordance with the Grant Mechanism; and
- (c) the Payment Dates are the dates set out in the Grant Agreement for the payment of grant by the Secretary of State in each of the Relevant Years commencing on 1 April 2019, 1 April 2020, 1 April 2021, 1 April 2022 and 1 April 2023 or, if no such dates are set out, the first Wednesday of each railway period in each such Relevant Year.

##### *1.2 Not used*

## 2 English & Welsh Grant Dilution

### 2.1 *Meaning of English & Welsh Grant Dilution*

For the purposes of this Part 3A, there shall be an “**English & Welsh Grant Dilution**” in respect of a Payment Date if:

- (a) the Secretary of State does not, for any reason, pay the whole or any part of the Basic Amount on or before the relevant Payment Date;
- (b) the Secretary of State has not, for any reason, paid the whole of the Grant Amount for any Relevant Year minus any amounts already paid as Basic Amounts for that Relevant Year (“**the Balance of the Grant Amount**”) on or before the final Payment Date of that Relevant Year; or
- (c) the payment of the whole or any part of the Basic Amount or of the Balance of the Grant Amount in respect of that Payment Date is:
  - (i) subject to the performance by Network Rail or any other person of any obligation;
  - (ii) subject to the exercise by the Secretary of State or any other person of any discretion; or
  - (iii) contingent upon the happening of any event or circumstance, or any act or omission of any person.

### 2.2 *Meaning of English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date*

In respect of any English & Welsh Grant Dilution:

- (a) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind referred to in paragraph 2.1(a) or in paragraph 2.1(b), the English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date shall be the Payment Date in respect of which the Secretary of State does not pay the whole or any part of the Basic Amount or the Balance of the Grant Amount due on that date; and
- (b) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind referred to in paragraph 2.1(c), each Payment Date which falls during any period during which the payment of the whole or any part of a Basic Amount or the Balance of the Grant Amount is:
  - (i) subject to any of the matters specified in paragraph 2.1(c)(i) or (ii); or
  - (ii) contingent upon any of the matters specified in paragraph 2.1(c)(iii),

shall be an English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date.

### **3. English & Welsh Grant Compensation Amount**

#### *3.1 Payment obligation*

If an English & Welsh Grant Dilution occurs:

- (a) Network Rail shall notify the Train Operator and ORR that an English & Welsh Grant Dilution has occurred, and the circumstances in which it has occurred; and
- (b) the Train Operator shall:
  - (i) send a copy of the notification it has received from Network Rail under paragraph 3.1(a) to any Passenger Transport Executive within whose area it provides services for the carriage of passengers by railway;
  - (ii) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind described in paragraph 2.1(a) or in paragraph 2.1(b), pay Network Rail an English & Welsh Grant Compensation Amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.2 three months after the English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date; and
  - (iii) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind described in paragraph 2.1(c), pay Network Rail an English & Welsh Grant Compensation Amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.2 three months after each English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date.

#### *3.2 Calculation*

Any English & Welsh Grant Compensation Amount payable under paragraph 3.1 is an amount calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$GC = (GA_p - P) \cdot \frac{F_r}{AF_r}$$

where:

GC means the English & Welsh Grant Compensation Amount;

$GA_p$  means the Basic Amount or, as the case may be, the Balance of the Grant Amount for the Payment Date which is the same date as the English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date;

P means:

- (a) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind described in paragraph 2.1(a) or in paragraph 2.1(b), the amount of any part payment of the Basic Amount or, as the case may be, the Balance of the Grant Amount which Network Rail certifies to the Train Operator, within seven days after the English & Welsh Grant Dilution Date, that it has received from the Secretary of State; and
- (b) if the English & Welsh Grant Dilution is of the kind described in paragraph 2.1(c), zero;

$F_t$  has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of Part 2; and

$AF_t$  means the Aggregate Fixed Charge in Relevant Year  $t$ .

#### **PART 4: NOT USED**

#### **PART 5: ADDITIONAL CHARGES**

NOT USED

#### **PART 6: SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS**

Each invoice or credit note issued by Network Rail to the Train Operator shall contain or be accompanied by separate itemisation of the following charges and other information (as relevant) in respect of the period covered by the invoice or credit note:

- (a) the daily amount of the Fixed Track Charge and the number of days covered by the invoice;
- (b) the rate of Variable Usage Charge and any VUC Default Charge and the relevant number of Vehicle Miles applicable to vehicles for each service so charged;
- (c) the rate of Traction Electricity Charge and the number of Vehicle Miles applicable to vehicles for each service or Gross Tonne Miles applicable to units for each service so charged, for the purposes of calculating  $E_{tmo}$  in accordance with paragraph 4.1.2 of Part 2;
- (d) the amount of the Electrification Asset Usage Charge and the number of days covered by the invoice;
- (e) not used;
- (f) not used;
- (g) not used;
- (h) the amount of any sum  $W_t$  payable as provided in paragraph 7 of Part 2;
- (i) the amount of any sum  $S1_{to}$  and/or  $S2_{to}$  and/or any Charge Correction Amount payable as provided in paragraph 18 of the Traction Electricity Rules;

- (j) the amount of any sum  $K_t$  payable as provided in paragraph 6 of Part 2;
- (k) in respect of any other sums which have fallen due in accordance with any provisions of this contract other than Part 3A, separately the amount payable in respect of each head of charge; and
- (l) the amount of any sum  $FW_t$  payable as provided in paragraph 2A of Part 2.

## **PART 7: FUTURE ACCESS CHARGES REVIEWS**

### **1 General**

ORR may carry out one or more access charges reviews of all or part of this contract as follows:

- (a) an access charges review such that amendments to this contract to give effect to the conclusions of such an access charges review come into operation on and from 1 April 2024 or such later date as may be specified in that review; and
- (b) as provided in paragraph 2 (and only as provided in paragraph 2), an access charges review such that amendments to this contract to give effect to the conclusions of such an access charges review come into operation before 1 April 2024.

### **2 Access charges reviews capable of coming into operation before 1 April 2024**

ORR may carry out an access charges review in relation to any relevant part or parts of this contract at any time where it considers:

- (a) that there has been, or is likely to be, a material change, other than an excluded change, in the circumstances of Network Rail or in relevant financial markets or any part of such markets; and
- (b) that there are compelling reasons to initiate an access charges review, having due regard to its duties under section 4 of the Act, including in particular the duty to act in a manner which it considers will not render it unduly difficult for persons who are holders of network licences to finance any activities or proposed activities of theirs in relation to which ORR has functions under or by virtue of Part I of the Act.

### **3. Interpretation**

In this Part 7 references to ORR carrying out an access charges review shall be construed as including references to its initiating implementation of that review.

### **4. Interim treatment of future access charges reviews**

#### **4.1 *Interim treatment prior to implementation***



If the terms of a Proposed Review Notice proposing amendments to the contract are not implemented in accordance with paragraph 7 of Schedule 4A to the Act on the date stipulated that they will come into operation in the Proposed Review Notice for any reason, then, irrespective of such terms not having been so implemented, each proposed amendment to the contract set out in the Proposed Review Notice shall have effect for the period (the “**Interim Period**”) commencing on that date (or from any later date (or dates) specified in the Proposed Review Notice in respect of any individual amendment), in each case until such time as:

- (a) following the service of a Review Implementation Notice relating to the Proposed Review Notice, the changes specified in that Review Implementation Notice come into operation; or
- (b) following a reference to the Competition and Markets Authority in accordance with paragraph 9 of Schedule 4A to the Act, any amendments to the contract, made in accordance with paragraphs 12(8), 12(9) or 14(3) of Schedule 4A to the Act, come into operation.

#### 4.2 ***Reconciliation Payment***

- (a) Within 28 days after the end of the Interim Period, Network Rail shall calculate whether a reconciliation payment is due to or from the Train Operator. In order to calculate such reconciliation payment, Network Rail shall compare (i) the sums paid by the Train Operator during the Interim Period with (ii) the sums which would have been payable if the amendments required by either paragraphs 4.1(a) or (b) above had taken effect on the date(s) stipulated in the Proposed Review Notice, and shall provide to the Train Operator:
  - (i) a statement of the amount due to or from the Train Operator; and
  - (ii) such background data and workings as may reasonably be required for a proper understanding of the calculation.
- (b) Within 14 days after the date upon which Network Rail shall have provided to the Train Operator the information referred to in paragraph 4.2(a) above, the Train Operator shall notify Network Rail of any aspects of the statement which it disputes, giving reasons for any dispute. Save to the extent that disputes are so notified, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of the statement.
- (c) If any dispute is notified under paragraph 4.2(b) above, it shall be resolved according to the following procedure:
  - (i) within seven days of service of the relevant notice, the parties shall meet to discuss the disputed aspects with a view to resolving all disputes in good faith;

- (ii) if, for any reason, within seven days of the meeting referred to in paragraph 4.2(c)(i) above, the parties are still unable to agree any disputed aspects, each party shall promptly and in any event within seven days, prepare a written summary of the disputed aspects and the reasons for each such dispute and submit such summaries to the senior officer of each party;
  - (iii) within 28 days of the first meeting of the parties, the senior officers of the parties shall meet with a view to resolving all disputes; and
  - (iv) if no resolution results before the expiry of 14 days following that meeting, then either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.
- (d) Within 28 days after the date upon which Network Rail shall have provided to the Train Operator the information referred to in paragraph 4.2(a) above (if not disputed) or 28 days of resolution or determination of any dispute in accordance with paragraph 4.2(c) above, any amount due shall be invoiced (or presented in a credit note, as the case may be) for payment, and payable, as provided under this contract.

**APPENDIX 7A – (NOT USED)**

**APPENDIX 7B – (NOT USED)**

## Appendix 7C Default train consist data<sup>115th</sup>

<b>Train Service Code</b>	<b>Type of Train Movement</b>	<b>Default Train Consist Data</b>
25210004	Train movement(s) between Marylebone – Harrow on the Hill / Aylesbury	1 Class 165 (3 motor vehicles)
25211004	Train movement(s) between Marylebone – High Wycombe – Princes Risborough - Aylesbury	1 Class 165 (3 motor vehicles)
25530004	Train movement(s) between Marylebone – Banbury – Leamington – Birmingham – Kidderminster / Stratford- upon-Avon	1 Class 168 (4 motor vehicles)
25535004	Train movement(s) between Marylebone – Bicester Village - Oxford	1 Class 168 (3 motor vehicles)
25217004	Unplanned Gemini – Chiltern*	1 Class 168 (3 motor vehicles)

### Note

- \* covers all movements of train multiple units made pursuant to a Train Operator Variation Request<sup>85th</sup>, which do not fall under other types of train movements included or to be included in this Table.

**APPENDIX 7D** <sup>106TH</sup>

**"METERED TRAINS M" FOR THE PURPOSES OF PARAGRAPH 4.1.1 OF PART 2**

<b>Train Type</b>	<b>Train ID</b>	<b>Traction Type</b>
	<i>[This column should include the full train ID. If all trains of the relevant train type used by the Train Operator are metered, this column should say “All”.]</i>	

## Schedule 8 Performance regime<sup>106th</sup>

### 1. Interpretation

#### 1.1 Definitions

In this Schedule 8 and its Appendices, unless the context otherwise requires:

<b>“Applicable Timetable”</b>	means, in respect of a day, that part of the Working Timetable in respect of that day which is required to be drawn up in accordance with Condition D2.1.1 of the Network Code as at 2200 hours on the day prior to that day, and which is applicable to the Trains;
<b>“Bi-annual Timetable”</b>	means in respect of any day or any Period the Passenger Timetable commencing on either the Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (as the case may be) in which falls the last day of the Period containing that day or the last day of that Period respectively;
<b>“Cancelled Stop”</b>	means in relation to a Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to stop to set down passengers at a Monitoring Point, the Train failing to trigger that Monitoring Point (except where the failure of the train to trigger the Monitoring Point is due to a malfunction of the Monitoring Point);
<b>“Cancellation Minutes”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means, in relation to a Cancelled Stop, the number of Cancellation Minutes specified in column F of Appendix 1 for the Service Group which includes that Train;
<b>“Cap”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means, in relation to a Monitoring Point, or a Train, the cap for the relevant Service Group in column G of Appendix 1;
<b>“Capped Value”</b>	means in relation to any Service Group, the capped value (if any) specified in respect of that Service Group in Appendix 1 (as indexed in accordance with paragraph 9);
<b>“Charter Destination Point”</b>	means any such station so specified in Appendix 2;
<b>“CPI”<sup>129th</sup></b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;
<b>“ETCS”</b>	means the European Train Control System;
<b>“Initial Indexation Factor”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;
<b>“Joint Inquiry”</b>	means a formal inquiry which is required by any of the Railway Group Standards to be held or is permitted by any of the Railway Group Standards to be held and is in fact held;
<b>“Minutes Delay”</b>	means, in relation to a Train and a Recording Point, the delay at that Recording Point, calculated in accordance with paragraph 3;

<b>“Minutes Late”</b>	means, in relation to a day and a Monitoring Point, the lateness at that Monitoring Point, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;
<b>“Monitoring Point”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means, in relation to a direction of a Service, a point listed in column J of Appendix 1 as a point to be used for recording lateness of Trains in accordance with paragraph 2, and each such Monitoring Point shall be treated as a separate Monitoring Point notwithstanding that it may also be a Monitoring Point for the same Service in the opposite direction and/or for other Services;
<b>“Network Rail Performance Point or NRPP”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means, in relation to a Service Group, the Network Rail performance point specified in column B of Appendix 1;
<b>“Off-Peak”</b>	where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;
<b>“Passenger’s Charter”</b>	means a commitment to passengers generally (whether or not legally binding) made by the Train Operator or any Passenger Transport Executive (in respect of any services operated by the Train Operator which are the subject of arrangements between the Train Operator and that Passenger Transport Executive) in relation to the punctuality and/or reliability of all or any of the Trains. The foregoing shall not be construed as to include any specific alternative or additional arrangements with any particular passenger (whether or not legally binding);
<b>“Passenger Timetable”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means those elements of the Applicable Timetable which are intended to be advertised to the public;
<b>“Peak”</b>	Where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;
<b>“Performance Data Accuracy Code”</b>	means the version of the Performance Data Accuracy Code referred to in Part B of the Network Code;
<b>“Performance Monitoring System”</b>	means the recording system which Network Rail is required to operate under Part B of the Network Code;
<b>“Performance Sum”</b>	means, in relation to a Service Group, a sum of money which Network Rail or the Train Operator is liable to pay to the other under this Schedule 8, as calculated in accordance with paragraph 9 or 10, as the case may be;
<b>“Period”</b>	means each consecutive period of 28 days during the term of this contract commencing at 0000 hours on 1 April in each year, provided that the length of the first and last such Period in any year may be varied by up to seven days on reasonable prior notice from Network Rail to the Train Operator;
<b>“Recording Point”</b>	means a point at which Network Rail records Trains using the Performance Monitoring System;



<b>“Recovery Time”</b>	means additional time incorporated in the Applicable Timetable to allow for a Train to regain time lost during an earlier part of its journey;
<b>“Relevant Year”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;
<b>“Restriction of Use”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 4;
<b>“Season Ticket”</b>	means any ticket valid for unlimited travel on a Service for not less than a period of one calendar month;
<b>“Service Code”</b>	means the third, fourth and fifth digits of an eight character train service code applied in the Performance Monitoring System to Trains and used to identify them;
<b>“Service Group”</b>	means a collection of Services contained within the service groups specified in column A of Appendix 1;
<b>“Train”</b>	means each train operating a Service which is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator pursuant to the permission to use the Routes granted under this contract; and</li> <li>(b) used to provide services for the carriage of passengers by railway,</li> </ul> but excludes any and all trains making an Ancillary Movement; and
<b>“Train Operator Performance Point”<sup>129th</sup></b>	means, in relation to a Service Group, the Train Operator performance point specified in column D of Appendix 1.

## 1.2 Interpretation

For the purposes of this Schedule 8:

- (a) <sup>129th</sup> a Train shall be treated as being in a Service Group for that part of its journey during which it satisfies the characteristics specified in columns A, H and J of Appendix 1 as forming a Service which is included in that Service Group;
- (b) events in respect of a Train shall be treated as occurring on the day on which the Train is scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to depart from the first point at which it is to pick up passengers; and
- (c) save as otherwise provided, each final calculation of minutes shall be accurate to three decimal places.

## 1.3 Suspension Notices

Wherever a Suspension Notice is in force, the effects of that Suspension Notice shall be the subject of Clause 3.6 and not of this Schedule 8. Accordingly, for the purposes of this Schedule 8:

- (a) neither Network Rail nor the Train Operator shall be allocated any responsibility for those effects; and
- (b) those effects shall not be regarded as causing any Minutes Late or Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops.

## 2 Calculation of Minutes Late

The Minutes Late at a Monitoring Point on a day shall be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{Minutes Late} = \Sigma L$$

where:

L in respect of a Train is the lesser of:

- (i) the number of minutes (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) by which the time at which the Train stops at the Monitoring Point is later than the time at which that Train is scheduled in the Passenger Timetable to stop at that Monitoring Point; and

- (ii) the Cap,

provided that no regard shall be had for any Train which is not recorded as stopping at the Monitoring Point; and

$\Sigma$  is the sum across all those Trains in the relevant Service Group which are scheduled in the Passenger Timetable to stop at that Monitoring Point on that day which do so stop.

## 3 Calculation of Minutes Delay

The Minutes Delay in respect of a Train when it triggers a Recording Point shall be equal to:

- (a) in respect of the first Recording Point triggered by that Train on any day, the number of minutes (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) by which the time at which that Train triggers the Recording Point is later than the time at which that Train is scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to do so; and

- (b) in respect of any other Recording Point, the lesser of:

- (i) the number of Minutes Delay in respect of that Recording Point calculated in accordance with paragraph 3(a) (as if that Recording Point were the first Recording Point triggered by that Train); and

- (ii) the greater of  $((A_1 - A_2) + B)$  and zero

where:

A<sub>1</sub> is the number of minutes between the time at which the Train triggers the Recording Point (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) and the time the Train last triggered a Recording Point (rounded down to the nearest whole minute);

A<sub>2</sub> is the relevant time lapse scheduled in the Applicable Timetable between those same two Recording Points; and

B is any Recovery Time between those Recording Points incorporated in the Applicable Timetable;

provided that:

- (1) any Minutes Delay which arise from a single incident or a series of related incidents and which are less than three minutes in aggregate shall be deemed to be zero; and

- (2) <sup>129th</sup> if for any Train the aggregate Minutes Delay in respect of all Recording Points caused by a single incident are in excess of the Cap

specified in column G of Appendix 1 for that Service Group, then such excess shall be disregarded.

## **4 Recording of performance information**

### *4.1 Recording of lateness, Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops*

Without prejudice to its obligations under Part B of the Network Code, Network Rail shall use the Performance Monitoring System to record for each day in respect of each Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable:

- (a) the time at which the Train stops to set down passengers at each Monitoring Point;
- (b) each Cancelled Stop and the incident(s) causing such Cancelled Stop where the incident can be identified;
- (c) the time at which the Train triggers each Recording Point;
- (d) the Minutes Delay for that Train at each Recording Point;
- (e) where the Minutes Delay which that Train has accrued since the last Recording Point are greater than or equal to three minutes:
  - (i) the incident(s) causing each minute of any delay included in Minutes Delay; and
  - (ii) those Minutes Delay for which Network Rail is unable to identify a cause; and
- (f) for each Charter Destination Point in respect of Trains for which the Charter Destination Point is a destination for the purposes of a Passenger's Charter, the time of the Train's arrival.

The provisions of this Schedule 8, which concern the recording of train performance information or which refer to information regarding train performance, and the rights and remedies of the parties in respect of the recording of that information, shall be subject to and interpreted in accordance with the provisions of the Performance Data Accuracy Code.

### *4.2 Recording of allocated responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops*

Network Rail shall for each day and for each Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable record separately in the Performance Monitoring System those Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops caused by incidents:

- (a) for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.2;
- (b) for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.3;
- (c) for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are allocated joint responsibility, in accordance with paragraph 5.4;
- (d) for which no cause can be identified; and
- (e) which are planned incidents in accordance with paragraph 5.7.

### *4.3 Failed Recording Points*

Without prejudice to its obligations under Part B of the Network Code, Network Rail shall use all reasonable endeavours:

- (a) to restore as soon as reasonably practicable any failed Recording Point; and

- (b) pending such restoration, to compile such information from manual records and other sources, including the Train Operator, and otherwise to substitute such information as is appropriate to reflect as accurately as is reasonably practicable the actual performance of the relevant Trains for the purposes of this Schedule 8.

#### *4.4 Provision of information by Train Operator*

The Train Operator shall record and shall continue to record such information as Network Rail may reasonably require and which it is reasonable to expect the Train Operator to have or procure in connection with any Minutes Delay that may arise and shall provide such information to Network Rail promptly after such information first becomes available to the Train Operator.

Network Rail shall promptly notify the Train Operator upon Network Rail becoming aware of any failure or any likely failure to record accurately the information which it is required to record under paragraph 4.1. Any such notification shall be in sufficient detail to enable the Train Operator to institute the recording of such information in connection with the Trains for which the recording of information is subject to such failure or likely failure as the Train Operator may reasonably achieve. The Train Operator shall institute such recording as soon as it is reasonably able following receipt of the notification from Network Rail and will provide Network Rail with the resulting information no later than 1700 hours two Working Days following the day on which it was recorded.

### **5 Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops**

#### *5.1 Assessment of incidents causing Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops*

- (a) In assessing the cause of any Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stop, there shall be taken into account all incidents contributing thereto including:
  - (i) the extent to which each party has taken reasonable steps to avoid and/or mitigate the effects of the incidents; and
  - (ii) where a Restriction of Use overruns due to the start of such Restriction of Use being delayed by a late running Train, the incident(s) giving rise to that late running;
- (b) The parties shall take reasonable steps to avoid and mitigate the effects of any incidents upon the Trains and any failure to take such steps shall be regarded as a separate incident;
- (c) Network Rail shall identify:
  - (i) in respect of each incident recorded under paragraph 4.1(e)(i) as causing Minutes Delay, the extent to which that incident caused each of the Minutes Delay; and
  - (ii) in respect of each incident recorded under paragraph 4.1(b), the extent to which that incident caused the Cancelled Stop;
- (d) So far as Network Rail is reasonably able to do so, it shall identify whether responsibility for incidents causing Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops is to be allocated to Network Rail or to the Train Operator or to them jointly in accordance with the following provisions of this paragraph 5.

## *5.2 Network Rail responsibility incidents*

Responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops on a day caused by incidents for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility pursuant to this paragraph 5.2 shall be allocated to Network Rail. Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, Network Rail shall be allocated responsibility for an incident other than a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7), if that incident is caused wholly or mainly:

- (a) by breach by Network Rail of any of its obligations under this contract; or
- (b) (whether or not Network Rail is at fault) by circumstances within the control of Network Rail in its capacity as operator of the Network; or
- (c) (whether or not Network Rail is at fault) by any act, omission or circumstance originating from or affecting the Network (including its operation), including, subject to paragraph 5.3(b)(i), any incident in connection with rolling stock on the Network for which any train operator other than the Train Operator would be allocated responsibility if it were the Train Operator under this contract.

## *5.3 Train Operator responsibility incidents*

Responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops on a day caused by incidents for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility pursuant to this paragraph 5.3 shall be allocated to the Train Operator. Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, the Train Operator shall be allocated responsibility for an incident other than a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7) if that incident:

- (a) is caused wholly or mainly:
  - (i) by breach by the Train Operator of any of its obligations under this contract; or
  - (ii) (whether or not the Train Operator is at fault) by circumstances within the control of the Train Operator in its capacity as an operator of trains; or
  - (iii) (whether or not the Train Operator is at fault) by any act, omission or circumstance originating from or affecting rolling stock operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator (including its operation), including any such act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with or at any station (other than in connection with signalling under the control of Network Rail at that station or physical works undertaken by Network Rail at that station), any light maintenance depot or any network other than the Network; or
- (b) causes delay to:
  - (i) rolling stock operated by or on behalf of another train operator which is delayed in entering or leaving the Network due to any act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with a light maintenance depot or network other than the Network and, as a result of that delay, rolling stock operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator which is scheduled to leave or enter the Network at the connection with that light maintenance depot or other network is then delayed behind the first mentioned rolling stock; or
  - (ii) the commencement of a Train's journey, which is caused by the late running for any reason whatever of any rolling stock included in that Train when that rolling stock is operated by or on behalf of another train operator.

#### 5.4 *Joint responsibility incidents*

- (a) Network Rail and the Train Operator shall be allocated joint responsibility for:
  - (i) any incident which is not a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7), caused by an act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with or at a station which:
    - (1) is an act, omission or circumstance which affects the Network, or its operation, and prevents a Train entering or passing through a station at the time it is scheduled to do so; and
    - (2) prevents the access of passengers through the station to or from the Train; and paragraphs 5.2 and 5.3 shall not apply to any such incident; or
  - (ii) any identified incident in respect of which Network Rail and the Train Operator are equally responsible and for which neither Network Rail nor the Train Operator is allocated responsibility under paragraph 5.2 or 5.3.
- (b) Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops caused by incidents for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are allocated joint responsibility pursuant to paragraph 5.4(a) shall be allocated 50% to Network Rail and 50% to the Train Operator.

#### 5.5 *Unidentified incidents: Minutes Delay*

Responsibility for Minutes Delay on any day in respect of a Service Group caused by incidents which are unidentified, as recorded under paragraph 4.2(d), shall be allocated as follows:

- (a) if there are any Minutes Delay in respect of the Service Group recorded as being caused by incidents for which Network Rail or the Train Operator are allocated responsibility:
  - (i) 50% of the unidentified Minutes Delay under paragraph 4.2(d) shall be allocated to Network Rail, the Train Operator and joint responsibility incidents *pro rata* to the aggregate Minutes Delay for that Service Group respectively recorded as being their responsibility under this paragraph 5 for that day; and
  - (ii) the balance of the Minutes Delay under paragraph 4.2(d) shall be allocated to Network Rail; and
- (b) if no Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group are recorded as being caused by incidents for which Network Rail or the Train Operator are allocated responsibility, then Network Rail and the Train Operator shall each be allocated 50% of the unidentified Minutes Delay recorded under paragraph 4.2(d).

#### 5.6 *Unidentified incidents: Cancelled Stops*

Responsibility for Cancelled Stops on a day in respect of a Service Group caused by incidents which are unidentified shall be allocated 50% to Network Rail and 50% to the Train Operator.

#### 5.7 *Planned incidents*

An incident shall be treated as a planned incident if and to the extent that:

- (a) such incident was a Restriction of Use notified in accordance with Schedule 4 by Network Rail to the Train Operator; or

(b) there is Recovery Time in respect of that incident.

**5.8** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: aggregate Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the aggregate Minutes Delay on a day shall be the aggregate of all Minutes Delay recorded under paragraphs 4.2(a) to 4.2(d) in respect of all Trains in that Service Group scheduled in the Applicable Timetable.

**5.9** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Network Rail Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the Minutes Delay on a day allocated to Network Rail shall be the aggregate of any Minutes Delay allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.2, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5, provided that the Minutes Delay attributable to the EVG2 Works will be allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.2, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5;

**5.10** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Train Operator Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the Minutes Delay on a day allocated to the Train Operator shall be the aggregate of any Minutes Delay allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5, provided that the Minutes Delay attributable to the EVG2 Works shall not be allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5;

**5.11** *Network Rail Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level*

In respect of a Monitoring Point, the Cancelled Stops on a day allocated to Network Rail shall be the aggregate of any Cancelled Stops allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.2, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.6, provided that the Cancelled Stops attributable to the EVG2 Works will be allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.6;

**5.12** *Train Operator Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level*

In respect of a Monitoring Point, the Cancelled Stops on a day allocated to the Train Operator shall be the aggregate of any Cancelled Stops allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 or paragraph 5.6, provided that the Cancelled Stops attributable to the EVG2 Works shall not be allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.6.

## **6 Statement of allocated responsibility**

**6.1** *Initial statement*

For each day, Network Rail shall provide to the Train Operator as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event no later than the following Working Day:

- (a) the allocation of responsibility for incidents made by Network Rail under paragraph 5; and
- (b) a summary for each Service Group showing:

- (i) the aggregate Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops recorded under each category set out in paragraph 4.2; and
- (ii) a list of the Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops (in each case broken down by incident) recorded as the responsibility of Network Rail and as the responsibility of the Train Operator.

## 6.2 *Further statements*

If Network Rail's nominated representative has reasonable grounds to believe that any further incident was the responsibility of the Train Operator or of Network Rail but was not shown as such in the information made available in accordance with paragraph 6.1, then Network Rail may, within seven days after the last Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stop caused by that incident, issue a notice in accordance with paragraph 15 revising the information and/or allocations of responsibility made available under paragraph 6.1.

## 6.3 *Adjustment statements*

If Condition B3.3 (adjustment to prior results) applies in respect of all or part of a Period, then Network Rail shall promptly issue to the Train Operator a statement showing the necessary adjustments (if any) to statements already issued and Performance Sums already paid in respect of the Period, and any such adjusting statement shall be treated as if it were a statement under paragraph 11.1 and, subject to paragraph 12.2, an adjusting payment shall be payable within 28 days of Network Rail's statement.

## 6.4 *Disputes about statements of allocated responsibility*

- (a) Except to the extent that it has, within two Working Days of receipt, notified Network Rail in accordance with paragraph 15 that it disputes the contents of a statement under paragraphs 6.1 or 6.2, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of that statement. Any notification of a dispute shall specify the reasons for that dispute.
- (b) The parties shall attempt to resolve disputes notified in accordance with paragraph 6.4(a) as follows:
  - (i) within the next two clear Working Days after notification of any dispute, nominated representatives of the parties shall attempt to resolve that dispute; and
  - (ii) if agreement has not been reached after two clear Working Days, representatives authorised by a more senior level of management of the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to negotiate a resolution of the dispute.
- (c) Negotiations under paragraph 6.4(b)(ii) shall continue, if necessary, until a date no earlier than five clear Working Days after the end of the Period in which the event giving rise to the dispute referred to in paragraph 6.4(a) occurred.

## 7 **Allocation of Minutes Late to Network Rail**

In respect of each Monitoring Point, the Minutes Late on a day at that Monitoring Point allocated to Network Rail (MLNR) shall be calculated according to the following formulae:

if MD is greater than zero

$$\text{MLNR} = \frac{(\text{MDNR} \cdot \text{ML})}{\text{MD}} + \text{DMLNR}$$



or if MD is equal to zero

$$MLNR = (0.5 \cdot ML) + DMLNR$$

where:

ML is the aggregate Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on that day for all Trains in that Service Group, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;

MD<sup>129th</sup> is the aggregate Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group under which that Monitoring Point is listed in column J of Appendix 1, calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.8;

MDNR is that part of such MD allocated to Network Rail in accordance with paragraph 5.9; and

DMLNR is the deemed minutes late at that Monitoring Point on that day allocated to Network Rail, derived from the following formula:

$$DMLNR = RC \cdot CM$$

where:

RC is the number of Cancelled Stops recorded at that Monitoring Point on that day for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.11; and

CM<sup>129th</sup> is the Cancellation Minutes for that Service Group set out in column F of Appendix 1.

## 8 Allocation of Minutes Late to the Train Operator

In respect of each Monitoring Point, the Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on a day allocated to the Train Operator (MLT) shall be calculated according to the following formulae:

if MD is greater than zero

$$MLT = \left( \frac{MDT}{MD} \cdot ML \right) + DMLT$$

or if MD is equal to zero

$$MLT = (0.5 \cdot ML) + DMLT$$

where:

ML is the aggregate Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on that day for all Trains in that Service Group, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;

MD<sup>129th</sup> is the aggregate Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group under which that Monitoring Point is listed in column J of Appendix 1, calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.8;

MDT is that part of such MD allocated to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 5.10; and

DMLT is the deemed minutes late at that Monitoring Point on that day allocated to the Train Operator, derived from the following formula:

$$DMLT = TC \cdot CM$$

where:

TC is the number of Cancelled Stops recorded at that Monitoring Point on that day for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.12; and

CM<sup>129th</sup> is the Cancellation Minutes for that Service Group set out in column F of Appendix 1.

## 9 Network Rail Performance Sums

9.1 In respect of a Service Group, the Network Rail Performance Sum (NRPS) for each Period shall be calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{NRPS} = (\text{NRPP} - \text{NRWAML}) \cdot \text{BF} \cdot \text{NRPR}$$

where:

NRPP is the Network Rail Performance Point for that Service Group specified in column B of Appendix 1 for the year in which that Period falls;

NRWAML is the aggregate for all Monitoring Points in the Service Group of the weighted average minutes late allocated to Network Rail in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{NRWAML} = \sum \frac{(\text{MLNR} \cdot \text{MPW})}{\text{SP}}$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MLNR is the Minutes Late allocated to Network Rail in respect of each Monitoring Point in that Period, in accordance with paragraph 7;

MPW<sup>129th</sup> is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column K of Appendix 1; and

SP is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled for the Period in the Applicable Timetable for which a stop or Cancelled Stop is recorded in accordance with paragraphs 4.1(a) and (b) except that if SP=0 for any Monitoring Point, then for that Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(\text{MLNR} \cdot \text{MPW})}{\text{SP}}$  shall equal zero;

BF is the relevant busyness factor estimated for the Period according to the following formula:

$$\text{BF} = \sum (\text{MPW} \cdot \frac{\text{SD}}{\text{AS}})$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW <sup>129th</sup> is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column K of Appendix 1;

SD is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled in the Applicable Timetable for that Period for that Service Group; and

AS is the average number of stops per day at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable in respect of that Period except that if AS=0 for any Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MPW \cdot SD)}{AS}$  shall equal zero; and

NRPR <sup>129th</sup> is the relevant Network Rail payment rate for that Service Group specified in column C of Appendix 1 as indexed in accordance with paragraph 13,

provided that:

(i) if a Capped Value is specified in respect of that Service Group in Appendix 1 and the value of NRPS in respect of any Period is determined in accordance with the formula set out in this paragraph to be greater than the Capped Value in respect of such Period, then the value of NRPS shall be deemed to be equal to the Capped Value in respect of such Period;

(ii) the Capped Value shall be multiplied by the CV indexation figure for the Relevant Year;

(iii) <sup>129th</sup> the CV indexation figure in Relevant Year t shall be derived from the following formula:

$$CV_t = \left(1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{2018})}{CPI_{2018}}\right) \times \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

CV<sub>t</sub> means the CV indexation in Relevant Year t;

CPI<sub>t-1</sub> means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-1; and

CPI<sub>2018</sub> means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2018,

except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019, CV<sub>t</sub> shall equal 1 x Initial Indexation Factor.

9.2 Where NRPS is less than zero, Network Rail shall pay the amount of the NRPS to the Train Operator. Where NRPS is greater than zero, the Train Operator shall pay that amount to Network Rail.

## 10 Train Operator Performance Sums

10.1 In respect of a Service Group, the Train Operator Performance Sum (TPS) for each Period shall be calculated according to the following formula:

$$TPS = (TPP - TWAML) \cdot BF \cdot TPR$$

where:

TPP <sup>129th</sup> is the Train Operator Performance Point for the Service Group specified in column D of Appendix 1;

TWAML is the aggregate for all Monitoring Points in the Service Group of the weighted average minutes late allocated to the Train Operator in accordance with the following formula:

$$TWAML = \sum \frac{(MLT \cdot MPW)}{SP}$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MLT is the Minutes Late allocated to the Train Operator in respect of each Monitoring Point in that Period, in accordance with paragraph 8;

MPW<sup>129th</sup> is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column K of Appendix 1; and

SP is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled for the Period in the Applicable Timetable for which a stop or Cancelled Stop is recorded in accordance with paragraphs 4.1(a) and (b) except that if SP=0 for any Monitoring Point, then for that Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MLT \cdot MPW)}{SP}$  shall equal zero;

BF is the relevant busyness factor estimated for the Period according to the following formula:

$$BF = \sum (MPW \cdot \frac{SD}{AS})$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW<sup>129th</sup> is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column K of Appendix 1;

SD is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Applicable Timetable for that Period for that Service Group; and

AS is the average number of stops per day at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable in respect of that Period except that if AS=0 for any Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MPW \cdot SD)}{AS}$  shall equal zero; and

TPR <sup>129th</sup> is the relevant Train Operator payment rate for that Service Group specified in column E of Appendix 1 as indexed in accordance with the provisions in paragraph 13.

- 10.2 Where TPS is less than zero, the Train Operator shall pay the amount of the TPS to Network Rail. Where TPS is greater than zero, Network Rail shall pay that amount to the Train Operator.

## **11 Notification of Performance Sums**

### *11.1 Notification*

Within 14 days after the end of each Period, Network Rail shall provide the Train Operator with a statement for each Service Group for that Period showing:

- (a) any Performance Sums for which Network Rail or the Train Operator is liable, together with such supporting information (other than information in respect of incidents recorded as the responsibility of Network Rail) as the Train Operator may reasonably require; and
- (b) any matter referred to in paragraph 6.1 which the Train Operator has disputed in accordance with paragraph 6.4(a) and which is still in dispute.

### *11.2 Disputes*

Within 14 days after receipt by the Train Operator of a statement required under paragraph 11.1, the Train Operator shall notify Network Rail of any aspects of such statement which it disputes, giving reasons for each such dispute. The Train Operator shall not dispute any matter which it has agreed or deemed to have agreed under paragraph 6. Such disputes and any matter referred to in paragraph 11.1(b) shall be resolved in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 16. Save to the extent that disputes are so notified, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of each statement.

## **12 Payment procedures**

### *12.1 Payments and set-off*

- (a) In respect of any and all Performance Sums for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are liable in any Period, the aggregate liabilities of Network Rail and the Train Operator shall be set off against each other. The balance shall be payable by Network Rail or the Train Operator, as the case may be, within 35 days after the end of the Period to which the payment relates.
- (b) Subject to paragraph 12.2, and save as otherwise provided, all other sums payable under this Schedule 8 shall be paid within 35 days after the end of the Period to which such payment relates.

### *12.2 Payments in the event of dispute*

Where any sum which is payable under this paragraph 12 is in dispute:

- (a) the undisputed amount shall be paid or set off (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 12.1;
- (b) the disputed balance (or such part of it as has been agreed or determined to be payable) shall be paid or set off (as the case may be) within 35 days after the end of the Period in which the dispute is resolved or determined; and
- (c) from the date at which such balance would but for the dispute have been due to be paid or set off, the disputed balance shall carry interest (incurred daily and compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate, unless the dispute relates to an incident the responsibility for which is the subject of a Joint Inquiry, in which case interest shall be payable at the prevailing base rate of Barclays Bank plc.

### **13 Payment rates**

- 13.1 <sup>129th</sup> Each payment rate in columns C and E of Appendix 1, expressed in pounds sterling and rounded to two decimal places, shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year t in accordance with the following formula:

$$R_t = R_{t-1} \times \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{t-2})}{CPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$R_t$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year t;

$R_{t-1}$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year t-1; and

$CPI_{t-1}$  has the same meaning as set out in paragraph 9.1 above of this Schedule 8; and

$CPI_{t-2}$  means the CPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-2,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019,  $R_t$  shall have the relevant value specified in the relevant column (either C or E) of Appendix 1, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor and in the next following Relevant Year,  $R_{t-1}$  shall have the same value.

### **14 Not used**

### **15 Notices**

- 15.1 All notices under this Schedule 8 shall be given in writing and shall be sent by prepaid first class post, email or fax or delivered by hand to the party in question at the address for service last notified by that party.
- 15.2 Any such notice shall be deemed to have been duly received:
- (a) if sent by prepaid first class post, three days after posting unless otherwise proven;
  - (b) if sent by hand, when delivered;
  - (c) <sup>129th</sup> if sent by facsimile, (subject to confirmation of uninterrupted transmission by a transmission report) before 17:00 hours on a business day, on the day of transmission and, in any other case, at 09:00 hours on the next following business day ("business day" for these purposes being a day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or a Public Holiday in the place where the transmission is to be received); and
  - (d) if sent by email, (unless a notice of non-delivery is received) upon receipt.

### **16 Disputes**

- 16.1 If any dispute is notified under paragraph 11.2 it shall be resolved according to the following procedure:
- (a) within seven days of service of the relevant notice (or, if the dispute relates to an incident the responsibility for which is or is to be the subject of a Joint Inquiry, within seven days of publication of the conclusion of that Joint Inquiry), the parties shall meet to discuss the disputed aspects with a view to resolving all disputes in good faith;
  - (b) if, for any reason, within seven days of the meeting referred to in paragraph 16.1(a), the parties are still unable to agree any disputed aspects, each party shall promptly and in any event within seven days prepare a written summary of the disputed aspects and

the reasons for each such dispute and submit such summaries to the senior officer of each party;

- (c) within 28 days of the first meeting of the parties, the senior officers of the parties shall meet with a view to resolving all disputes; and
- (d) if no resolution results before the expiry of 14 days following that meeting, then either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

## **17 Amendments to Appendix 1**

### *17.1 Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Appendix 1*

Either party may by notice to the other propose that Appendix 1 be amended in accordance with this paragraph 17.

### *17.2 Procedure for amendments to Appendix 1*

- (a) The party who wishes to amend Appendix 1 shall notify the other party of any such proposed change and the date from which it proposes that such change will have effect:
  - (i) where such change relates to a forthcoming timetable change, on or before the first day of the month six months before the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date on which that timetable change is due to occur; and
  - (ii) in any other case, prior to the date from which it proposes such change shall have effect.
- (b) Any notice under paragraph 17.2(a) shall:
  - (i) specify as far as possible that party's proposed amendments to Appendix 1; and
  - (ii) be accompanied by information and evidence in reasonable detail supporting the change proposed and setting out the reasons for it.
- (c) The party receiving a notice issued under paragraph 17.2(a) shall respond to that notice in writing, in reasonable detail and with reasons for its response, within 56 days of service of such notice.
- (d) Promptly (and in any event within 34 days) following the service of any response under paragraph 17.2(c), the parties shall endeavour to agree whether Appendix 1 should be amended in accordance with this paragraph 17 and, if so, the amendments.
- (e) If the parties fail to reach agreement within 90 days of service of a notice under paragraph 17.2(a), or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached within that period:
  - (i) either party may notify ORR; and
  - (ii) if ORR elects to determine the matter, the parties shall furnish ORR with such information and evidence as ORR shall require in order to determine the matter, such determination to be binding on the parties.
- (f) If ORR does not elect to determine the matter within 56 days of receipt by ORR of notification in accordance with paragraph 17.2(e)(i), either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR and the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement (such term to have the same meaning as in the ADRR) that:

- (i) the relevant ADRR Forum shall have regard to any relevant criteria and/or policy statement issued by ORR including in relation to the introduction of any capped value in respect of any Service Group in Appendix 1; and
  - (ii) that the relevant ADRR Forum will set out its reasoning in any determination.
- (g) An amendment to Appendix 1 shall take effect only when it has been approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act. Accordingly, as soon as reasonably practicable after any such amendment is agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 17 (other than a determination by ORR pursuant to paragraph 17.2(e)(ii)), the parties shall ensure that ORR is furnished with such amendment and such information and evidence as ORR requires to decide whether or not to approve the amendment.
- (h) Any agreed amendment to Appendix 1 in connection with the proposal referred to in paragraph 17.1 which is agreed by the parties or determined by the relevant ADRR Forum, and which is approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act shall apply with effect from either:
- (i) the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (where paragraph 17.2(a)(i) applies); or
  - (ii) the date proposed by the party requesting the change (where paragraph 17.2(a)(ii) applies), unless otherwise agreed by the parties or determined by the relevant ADRR Forum in accordance with paragraph 17.2(f).
- (i) Where ORR determines the matter subject to paragraph 17.2(e)(ii), it may issue a notice to the parties setting out the amendments to be made to Appendix 1 and the date, which may be retrospective, from which they shall take effect.

### *17.3 Adjustments to the Performance Monitoring System*

Network Rail shall make appropriate amendments to the Performance Monitoring System to reflect the amendments to Appendix 1 by the date when in accordance with paragraph 17.2 such amendments are to take effect, or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. Where any such amendment to Appendix 1 or any consequential amendment to the Performance Monitoring System is not made until after that date, Network Rail shall, promptly following such amendments being made, issue to the Train Operator a statement showing the necessary adjustments to the statements already issued and the payments already made in respect of Performance Sums up to and including the Period commencing on the date when in accordance with paragraph 17.2 such amendments to Appendix 1 are to take effect. Any such adjusting statement shall be treated as if it were a statement under paragraph 11.1 and, subject to paragraph 12.2, an adjusting payment shall be payable within 35 days of that adjusting statement.

### *17.4 Costs of implementing amendment*

Network Rail shall (subject to any determination of the relevant ADRR Forum as to costs, where a matter is referred to that forum under paragraph 17.2(f)) be entitled to ninety percent (90%) of costs incurred by or on behalf of Network Rail in assessing and implementing any amendments to Appendix 1 and the Performance Monitoring System, provided that those costs shall be the minimum reasonably necessary for Network Rail to assess and implement that amendment.

### *17.5 <sup>129th</sup> Relationship with Appendix 3 and remainder of Schedule 8*

Amendments to Appendix 1 may require consequential amendments to Appendix 3, and therefore references in this paragraph to amendments to Appendix 1 shall include any



amendments to Appendix 3 or any other relevant parts of Schedule 8 which are agreed or determined to be reasonably required in connection with those amendments to Appendix 1

## **17A ETCS Amendments**

### *17A.1 Circumstances in which ETCS Amendments can be made*

- (a) Either party may by notice to the other propose that amendments are made to this Schedule 8 (and to any other provisions of this contract as a result of those amendments) as a consequence of the introduction of ETCS on any of the Routes that the Train Operator has permission to use ("**ETCS Amendments**").
- (b) ORR may make ETCS Amendments, subject to complying with paragraph 17A.3.

### *17A.2 ETCS Amendments agreed by the parties*

- (a) A party that wishes to make ETCS Amendments shall serve a notice on the other party that:
  - (i) specifies as far as possible the proposed ETCS Amendments and the date from which they are to have effect; and
  - (ii) is accompanied by information and evidence in reasonable detail supporting the proposed ETCS Amendments and setting out the reasons for making them.
- (b) The party receiving a notice under paragraph 17A.2(a) shall respond in writing, in reasonable detail and with reasons for its response, within 30 Working Days of service of such notice.
- (c) Promptly, and in any event within 20 Working Days following service of a response pursuant to paragraph 17A.2(b), the parties shall use reasonable endeavours to agree the wording of the proposed ETCS Amendments and the date on which they are to have effect.
- (d) If:
  - (i) the parties agree to make ETCS Amendments pursuant to paragraph 17A.2(c); or
  - (ii) the parties fail to reach agreement within 50 Working Days of service of a notice under paragraph 17A.2(a), or prior to that date the parties agree that it is unlikely that agreement will be reached within that period,

they shall notify ORR.

### *17A.3 ORR right to approve, determine or make ETCS Amendments*

- (a) If ORR:
  - (i) receives a notification under paragraph 17A.2(d); or
  - (ii) proposes to make ETCS Amendments itself,then in deciding whether to approve, determine or make (as the case may be) the ETCS Amendments it shall:
  - (A) give the parties and such other persons, if any, as it considers appropriate, the opportunity to make representations in relation to the proposed ETCS Amendments; and
  - (B) take into account any representations received before making its decision, such decision to specify the date on which the ETCS Amendments shall have effect.

- (b) ORR may require either party to provide such information as it may reasonably require to make a decision pursuant to paragraph 17A.3(a), and such information shall be provided in accordance with any timescales and to the standard required by ORR.

## **18. Compensation for sustained poor performance**

### *18.1 Definitions*

In this paragraph 18, unless the context otherwise requires:

**“Average Periodic Liability”** means one thirteenth of the sum of all values of NRPS (as that term is defined in paragraph 9) to be calculated by deducting the sum of all values of NRPS for which the Train Operator is liable from the sum of all values of NRPS for which Network Rail is liable in each case in respect of the relevant Calculation Term;

**“Calculation Term”** means the 13 Periods immediately preceding each Periodic Liability Date;

**“Periodic Liability Date”** means the first day of the first, fourth, seventh and eleventh Periods in each Relevant Year ignoring for these purposes any Period that commences before the Transition Date as referred to in Clause 19; and

**“SPP Threshold”** means the value specified in respect of the end of the relevant Calculation Term in Appendix 3 (as indexed in accordance with paragraph 19).

### *18.2 <sup>129th</sup> Indemnity*

Network Rail shall indemnify the Train Operator against all Relevant Losses in accordance with this paragraph 18 if, and to the extent that, the Average Periodic Liability shows Network Rail has exceeded (that is, equalled or been worse than) the relevant SPP Threshold. For the avoidance of doubt, Relevant Losses for the purpose of providing compensation for sustained poor performance under this paragraph are to be measured in comparison to the position the Train Operator would have been in had Network Rail met the NRPP.

### *18.3 Determination of Relevant Losses*

Subject to paragraph 18.4, the liability of Network Rail under paragraph 18.2 for sustained poor performance (SPPL) shall be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{SPPL} = \text{RL} - \text{PS}$$

where:

**RL** means the Train Operator’s Relevant Losses arising as a direct result of Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops during the Calculation Term in each case insofar as these do not arise as a result of an incident for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility pursuant to paragraph 5.3; and

**PS** means the sum of all values of NRPS (as that term is defined in paragraph 9) to be calculated by deducting the sum of all values of NRPS for which the Train Operator is liable from the sum of all values of NRPS for which Network Rail is liable in each case in respect of the relevant Calculation Term;

#### 18.4 *Restrictions on claims by Train Operator*

The Train Operator shall not be entitled to make a claim for Relevant Losses pursuant to this paragraph 18:

- (a) if and to the extent that it has previously recovered those Relevant Losses whether under this paragraph 18 or otherwise; or
- (b) in relation to any Calculation Term or part of it that precedes the Transition Date as referred to in Clause 19.

### 19 <sup>129th</sup> **SPP Indexation**

#### 19.1 ***SPP Indexation***

Each value specified in Appendix 3, expressed in pounds sterling and rounded to two decimal places, shall be multiplied by the SPP indexation figure for the Relevant Year.

#### 19.2 ***Application of SPP Indexation***

The SPP indexation figure in Relevant Year t shall be derived from the following formula:

$$SPPI_t = \left( 1 + \frac{(CPI_{t-1} - CPI_{2018})}{CPI_{2018}} \right) \times \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

SPPI<sub>t</sub> means the SPP indexation in Relevant Year t;

CPI<sub>t-1</sub> has the meaning as set out in paragraph 9.1 above of this Schedule 8; and

CPI<sub>2018</sub> has the meaning as set out in paragraph 9.1 above of this Schedule 8;

except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2019, CV<sub>t</sub> shall equal 1 x Initial Indexation Factor.

# Appendix 1<sup>129th</sup>

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		I	J	K
Service Group	Network Rail		TOC		Cancellation Minutes	Cap	Service code		Direction	Monitoring Point	Weighting
	Performance Point	Payment Rate	Performance Point	Payment Rate							
HO01 Met Off-Peak	2019-20 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	45	180	210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
	2020-21 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Forward	AMERSHAM	[ ]
	2021-22 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY	[ ]
	2022-23 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AMERSHAM	[ ]
	2023-24 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY VALE PARKWAY	[ ]
HO01 Met Peak	2019-20 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	30	180	210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
	2020-21 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Forward	AMERSHAM	[ ]
	2021-22 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY	[ ]
	2022-23 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AMERSHAM	[ ]
	2023-24 [ ]						210	Marylebone - Harrow - Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY VALE PARKWAY	[ ]
HO02 Birmingham Off-Peak	2019-20 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	45	180	530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
	2020-21 [ ]						530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	LEAMINGTON SPA	[ ]
	2021-22 [ ]						530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
	2022-23 [ ]						530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	BIRMINGHAM SNOW HILL	[ ]
	2023-24 [ ]						530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BIRMINGHAM SNOW HILL	[ ]

							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BANBURY	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BICESTER NORTH	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	KIDDERMINSTER	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	STRATFORD UPON AVON	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BIRMINGHAM MOOR STREET	[ ]
HO02 Birmingham Peak	2019-20 [ ] 2020-21 [ ] 2021-22 [ ] 2022-23 [ ] 2023-24 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	30	180	530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	LEAMINGTON SPA	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Forward	BIRMINGHAM SNOW HILL	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BIRMINGHAM SNOW HILL	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BANBURY	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BICESTER NORTH	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	KIDDERMINSTER	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	STRATFORD UPON AVON	[ ]
							530	Marylebone - Banbury - Birmingham	Reverse	BIRMINGHAM MOOR STREET	[ ]
HO03 Joint Off-Peak	2019-20 [ ] 2020-21 [ ] 2021-22 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	30	156	211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro /	Forward	PRINCES	[ ]

	2022-23 [ ] 2023-24 [ ]							Aylesbury		RISBOROUGH	
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	GERRARDS CROSS	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	PRINCES RISBOROUGH	[ ]
HO03 Joint Peak	2019-20 [ ] 2020-21 [ ] 2021-22 [ ] 2022-23 [ ] 2023-24 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	18	126	211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Forward	PRINCES RISBOROUGH	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	AYLESBURY	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	GERRARDS CROSS	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	HIGH WYCOMBE	[ ]
							211	Marylebone - High Wycombe / P Risboro / Aylesbury	Reverse	PRINCES RISBOROUGH	[ ]
HO04 Oxford Off-Peak	2019-20 [ ] 2020-21 [ ] 2021-22 [ ] 2022-23 [ ] 2023-24 [ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	45	180	535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Forward	BICESTER VILLAGE	[ ]
							535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[ ]
							535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	OXFORD	[ ]
							535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	BICESTER VILLAGE	[ ]
							535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	OXFORD PARK WAY	[ ]

HO04 Oxford Peak	2019-20	[   ]	[   ]	[   ]	[   ]	30	160	535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Forward	BICESTER VILLAGE	[   ]
	2020-21	[   ]						535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Forward	LONDON MARYLEBONE	[   ]
	2021-22	[   ]						535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	OXFORD	[   ]
	2022-23	[   ]						535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	BICESTER VILLAGE	[   ]
	2023-24	[   ]						535	London Marylebone - Oxford	Reverse	OXFORD PARKWAY	[   ]

## **Appendix 2 – Charter Destination Points**

### Charter Destination Points:

Aylesbury  
Amersham  
Marylebone  
High Wycombe  
Princes Risborough  
Gerrards Cross  
Banbury  
Leamington Spa  
Birmingham Snow Hill  
Bicester North  
Warwick Parkway  
Stourbridge Junction  
Kidderminster



**APPENDIX 3 – SPP Thresholds<sup>129th</sup>**

	<b>Period:</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>13</b>
2019/20		[     ]	[     ]	[     ]	[     ]
2020/21		[     ]	[     ]	[     ]	[     ]
2021/22		[     ]	[     ]	[     ]	[     ]
2022/23		[     ]	[     ]	[     ]	[     ]
2023/24		[     ]	[     ]	[     ]	[     ]

With effect from the EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date, the Contract shall be amended as follows:

**Schedule 8A Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications<sup>73rd</sup>**

**1 Automatic effect**

**1.1 General**

This Contract shall have effect:

- (a) with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications; and
- (b) from the date,

specified by the ORR in a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

**1.2 Retrospective effect**

A Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications may have retrospective effect.

**2 Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications**

**2.1 Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 8 Modification**

In respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) the parties shall, within fourteen (14) days from the Start Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) the ORR's Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) the negotiations shall not continue after the Backstop Date.

**2.2 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications - failure to agree**

If the parties fail to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications on or before the Backstop Date:

- (a) the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
- (b) Network Rail shall within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

**2.3 Use of the ORR's Criteria in arbitration**

If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 2.2, the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:

- (a) determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications in accordance with the ORR's Criteria and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to establish the requisite Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) provide reasons for his award; and

- (c) state the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, give the reasons.

#### 2.4 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – notice to the ORR

Not later than seven (7) days after the Backstop Date or the conclusion of arbitration, as the case may be, the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) stating the reasons for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) stating the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) giving such other information as the ORR may have requested.

#### 2.5 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR's consent

If the ORR is satisfied with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 2.4, and it gives a notice to that effect, such modifications shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 1.1.

#### 2.6 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR's refusal of consent

If the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, it may:

- (a) require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.4 for agreeing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications itself and give a notice specifying such Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

#### 2.7 Payment adjustments

Within ten (10) Working Days of the date of any notice referred to in paragraph 1.1 the parties shall make such adjustments to the payments made under Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) of this Contract as are necessary to ensure that the parties are in the financial position in respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications as if those modifications had had effect from the date specified in the notice given under paragraph 1.1.

### 3 Procedural matters

#### 3.1 Co-operation and information

If the ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications or proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by the ORR; and
- (b) if that party fails timeously to do so, the ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without

the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

### 3.2 The ORR's Criteria

Any Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall:

- (a) be drafted to meet a high standard of simplicity, clarity and legal precision;
- (b) use definitions, terminology and numbering, including any bespoke provisions based on previous track access agreements, which are consistent with the defined terms, terminology and numbering used in this Contract;
- (c) take account, where relevant, of the 'Criteria and procedures for the approval of track access contracts' published by the Office of Rail Regulation and dated 21 August 2009; and
- (d) take account of the duties of the ORR under Section 4 of the Act;

### 3.3 Procedural modifications

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 2 for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) such procedure may be modified by the ORR by a Notice of Procedural Modifications; but
- (b) the ORR may only give a Notice of Procedural Modifications if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in Section 4 of the Act or if it is requested by both parties.

### 3.4 Dates

In this Schedule:

- (a) where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by the ORR, it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) any notice given by the ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

### 3.5 Consolidated contract

Not later than twenty eight (28) days after the giving of a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and the ORR a copy of this Contract as so modified.

### 3.6 Saving

Nothing in this Schedule affects the right of either party to approach and obtain from the ORR guidance in relation to Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

## 4 Definitions

In this Schedule 8A:

**Backstop Date** means eighteen (18) months after the implementation of the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable

**Notice of Consent** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.5;

**Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.6(b);

**Notice of Procedural Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 3.3 modifying any aspect of the procedures in this Schedule;

**ORR's Criteria** means the criteria set out in paragraph 3.2;

**Start Date** means the date of implementation of the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable; and

**Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications** means:

- (a) any modifications to Appendices 1 and 3 to Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) to reflect the alterations to the Services arising from the amendment of services to be operated by the Train Operator following EG3 Phase 1 of the EG3 Project which are necessary or desirable to achieve the objectives set out in the ORR's Criteria in the most efficient and economic manner; and
- (b) any modifications to any other schedule of this Contract which are necessary as a consequence of any modifications under paragraph (a).

**Schedule 8B Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications<sup>73rd</sup>**

**1 Automatic effect**

**1.1 General**

This Contract shall have effect:

- (a) with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications; and
- (b) from the date,

specified by the ORR in a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

**1.2 Retrospective effect**

A Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications may have retrospective effect.

**2 Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications**

**2.1 Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 8 Modification**

In respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) the parties shall, within fourteen (14) days from the Start Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) the ORR's Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) the negotiations shall not continue after the Backstop Date.

**2.2 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications - failure to agree**

If the parties fail to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications on or before the Backstop Date:

- (a) the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
- (b) Network Rail shall within five (5) Working Days notify the ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

**2.3 Use of the ORR's Criteria in arbitration**

If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 2.2, the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:

- (a) determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications in accordance with the ORR's Criteria and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to establish the requisite Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) provide reasons for his award; and

- (c) state the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, give the reasons.

#### 2.4 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – notice to the ORR

Not later than seven (7) days after the Backstop Date or the conclusion of arbitration, as the case may be, the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall be sent by the parties to the ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) stating the reasons for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) stating the extent to which and ways in which the ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) giving such other information as the ORR may have requested.

#### 2.5 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR's consent

If the ORR is satisfied with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 2.4, and it gives a notice to that effect, such modifications shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 1.1.

#### 2.6 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – the ORR's refusal of consent

If the ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, it may:

- (a) require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.4 for agreeing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications itself and give a notice specifying such Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

#### 2.7 Payment adjustments

Within ten (10) Working Days of the date of any notice referred to in paragraph 1.1 the parties shall make such adjustments to the payments made under Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) of this Contract as are necessary to ensure that the parties are in the financial position in respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications as if those modifications had had effect from the date specified in the notice given under paragraph 1.1.

### 3 Procedural matters

#### 3.1 Co-operation and information

If the ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications or proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by the ORR; and
- (b) if that party fails timeously to do so, the ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without

the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

### 3.2 The ORR's Criteria

Any Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall:

- (a) be drafted to meet a high standard of simplicity, clarity and legal precision;
- (b) use definitions, terminology and numbering, including any bespoke provisions based on previous track access agreements, which are consistent with the defined terms, terminology and numbering used in this Contract;
- (c) take account, where relevant, of the 'Criteria and procedures for the approval of track access contracts' published by the Office of Rail Regulation and dated 21 August 2009; and
- (d) take account of the duties of the ORR under Section 4 of the Act;

### 3.3 Procedural modifications

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 2 for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) such procedure may be modified by the ORR by a Notice of Procedural Modifications; but
- (b) the ORR may only give a Notice of Procedural Modifications if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in Section 4 of the Act or if it is requested by both parties.

### 3.4 Dates

In this Schedule:

- (a) where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by the ORR, it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) any notice given by the ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

### 3.5 Consolidated contract

Not later than twenty eight (28) days after the giving of a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and the ORR a copy of this Contract as so modified.

### 3.6 Saving

Nothing in this Schedule affects the right of either party to approach and obtain from the ORR guidance in relation to Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

## 4 Definitions

In this Schedule 8B:

**Backstop Date** means eighteen (18) months after the implementation of the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable

**Notice of Consent** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.5;



**Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.6(b);

**Notice of Procedural Modifications** means a notice given by the ORR to the parties under paragraph 3.3 modifying any aspect of the procedures in this Schedule;

**ORR's Criteria** means the criteria set out in paragraph 3.2;

**Start Date** means the date of implementation of the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable; and

**Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications** means:

- (a) any modifications to Appendices 1 and 3 to Schedule 8 (Performance Regime) to reflect the alterations to the Services arising from the amendment of services to be operated by the Train Operator following EG3 Phase 2 of the EG3 Project which are necessary or desirable to achieve the objectives set out in the ORR's Criteria in the most efficient and economic manner; and
- (b) any modifications to any other schedule of this Contract which are necessary as a consequence of any modifications under paragraph (a).

## Schedule 9 Limitation on liability

### 1. Definitions

In this Schedule

**Liability Cap** means:<sup>129th</sup>

- (a) - in relation to the first Contract Year, the sum of £10,000,000; and
- (b) - in relation to any subsequent Contract Year, the sum calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$C_n = C_{2017-18} \times \left[ \frac{CPI_n}{CPI_{2017-18}} \right]$$

where: -

- (i)  $C_{2017-18} = C_1 \times \left[ \frac{RPI_{2017-18}}{RPI_1} \right]$
- (ii)  $C_1$  is the sum of £10,000,000;
- (iii)  $C_n$  is the Liability Cap in the nth subsequent Contract Year;
- (iv)  $CPI_n$  is the Consumer Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to the first month of the subsequent Contract Year n;
- (v)  $CPI_{2017-18}$  is the Consumer Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to that month in which a Contract Year starts in the Relevant Year which commences on 1 April 2017 and ends on 31 March 2018;
- (vi)  $RPI_{2017-18}$  is the Retail Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to that month in which a Contract Year starts in the Relevant Year which commences on 1 April 2017 and ends on 31 March 2018; and
- (vii) -  $RPI_1$  is the Retail Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to the month in which this contract became effective under Clause 3.1.

### 2. Application

The limitations on liability contained in this Schedule apply in the circumstances set out in Clause 11.5.

### **3. Limitation on Network Rail's liability**

In relation to any claim for indemnity made by the Train Operator to which this Schedule 9 applies:

- (a) - Network Rail shall not be liable to make payments in relation to such claims which are admitted in writing or finally determined in any Contract Year to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year; and
- (b) - to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year, any claim for payment of a sum which exceeds such Liability Cap shall be extinguished and Network Rail shall have no further liability for it.

### **4. Limitation on Train Operator's liability**

In relation to any claims for indemnity made by Network Rail to which this Schedule 9 applies:

- (a) - the Train Operator shall not be liable to make payments in relation to such claims which are admitted in writing or finally determined in any Contract Year to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year; and
- (b) - to the extent its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year, any claim for payment of a sum which exceeds such Liability Cap shall be extinguished and the Train Operator shall have no further liability for it.

### **5. Disapplication of limitation**

To the extent that any Relevant Losses:

- (a) - result from a conscious and intentional breach by a party; or
- (b) - are in respect of obligations to compensate any person for liability for death or personal injury, whether resulting from the negligence of a party or the negligence of any of its officers, employees or agents or from a failure by a party to comply with its Safety Obligations,

such Relevant Losses:

- (i) - shall not be subject to the limitation of liability in Schedule 9; and
- (ii) - shall not be taken into account when calculating the amount of Relevant Losses in respect of claims admitted or finally determined in a Contract Year for the purposes of the limitations of liability in this Schedule 9.

### **6. Exclusion of legal and other costs**

The limits on the parties' liabilities provided for in paragraphs 3 and 4 shall not apply to costs incurred in recovering any amount under a relevant claim, including legal, arbitral and other professional fees and expenses.

**7. Exclusion of certain Relevant Losses**

A party shall have no claim for Relevant Losses to the extent that such Relevant Losses result from its own negligence or breach of this contract.

**8. Continuing breaches**

Nothing in this Schedule 9 shall prevent a party making a new claim for indemnity in respect of a continuing breach of contract which:

- (a) - is a continuing breach of contract which continues for more than 12 months;
- (b) - is a continuing breach of contract which continues beyond a period within which it might reasonably be expected to have been remedied; or
- (c) - is a breach of a Performance Order in relation to a breach of contract,

but any such new claim shall not include any sum which was the subject matter of a previous claim and was extinguished by virtue of paragraph 3(b) or 4(b).

**9. Final determination of claims**

For the purpose of this Schedule 9, a determination of a claim for Relevant Losses by a Court or other tribunal shall be treated as final when there is no further right of appeal or review from such determination or in respect of which any right of appeal or review has been lost, whether by expiry of time or otherwise.

## **Schedule 10: Network Code and traction electricity rules modifications ations<sup>106th</sup>**

### **1 Automatic effect**

#### *1.1 General*

This contract shall have effect:

- (a) - with the modifications; and
- (b) - from the date,

specified by ORR in a modification notice as supplemented (where appropriate) by a notice of consent to requisite adaptations or a notice of determined requisite adaptations.

#### *1.2 Retrospective effect*

No relevant notice may have retrospective effect.

### **2 Modification notice**

#### *2.1 Meaning*

A modification notice is a notice given by ORR to the parties for the purposes of this contract which modifies specified provisions of this contract (other than this Schedule 10) by making such modifications as are consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to, any change to the Network Code or the Traction Electricity Rules.

#### *2.2 Contents of modification notice*

A modification notice shall state:

- (a) - the modifications which are to be made to this contract;
- (b) - the date from which specified modifications are to have effect; and, if any such modifications are to have effect from different dates, the dates applicable to each modification; and
- (c) - which of the specified modifications are to be subject to adaptation and the backstop date for the requisite adaptations in question.

### **3 Adaptation procedure**

#### *3.1 Application*

This paragraph 3 applies in the case of specified modifications which are specified as being subject to adaptation.

#### *3.2 Negotiation of adaptations*

In respect of the modifications in each modification notice:

- (a) - within 14 days of the date of service of the relevant modification notice, the parties shall meet and in good faith negotiate and attempt to agree the requisite adaptations;
- (b) - each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) - such negotiations are conducted in good faith in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) - ORR's criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) - the negotiations shall not continue after the backstop date.

### 3.3 *Agreed adaptations - notice to the Office of Rail Regulation*

If the parties have agreed the requisite adaptations on or before the backstop date, not later than seven days after the backstop date the agreed requisite adaptations shall be sent by the parties to ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) - stating the reasons for the agreed requisite adaptations;
- (b) - stating the extent to which and ways in which ORR's criteria have been applied in arriving at the agreed requisite adaptations and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) - giving such other information as ORR may have requested.

### 3.4 *Agreed adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's consent*

If ORR is satisfied with the agreed requisite adaptations, and it gives a notice of consent to requisite adaptations, they shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 3.8.

### 3.5 *Agreed requisite adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's refusal of consent*

If ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the agreed requisite adaptations, it may:

- (a) - require the parties again to follow the procedure for negotiating requisite adaptations (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) - determine the requisite adaptations itself.

### 3.6 *Requisite adaptations - failure to agree or submit*

If the parties have failed to submit agreed requisite adaptations to ORR for its consent within seven days after the backstop date, it may determine the requisite adaptations itself.

### 3.7 *Notice of determined requisite adaptations*

A notice of determined requisite adaptations is a notice:

- (a) - given by ORR to the parties for the purposes of this paragraph 3 following the failure of the parties to send to ORR within seven days of the backstop date requisite adaptations to which it gives its consent; and
- (b) - which states the requisite adaptations which ORR has determined should be made using its powers to do so under paragraph 3.5 or 3.6.

### *3.8 Effect of requisite adaptations*

Requisite adaptations established either:

- (a) - by agreement of the parties and in respect of which ORR has given a notice of consent to requisite adaptations under paragraph 3.4; or
- (b) - by the determination of ORR under paragraph 3.5 or 3.6 and stated in a notice of determined requisite adaptations,

shall have effect from such date as ORR states in the relevant notice of consent to requisite adaptations or (as the case may be) the relevant notice of determined requisite adaptations.

## **4 Procedural matters**

### *4.1 More than one notice*

More than one modification notice may be given.

### *4.2 Differences etc as to requisite adaptations*

Any difference or question as to whether any thing is a requisite adaptation shall be determined by ORR:

- (a) - on the application of either party; and
- (b) - in accordance with such procedure (including as to consultation) as ORR may by notice to the parties determine.

### *4.3 Co-operation and information*

If ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to any requisite adaptation or proposed requisite adaptation:

- (a) - the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by ORR; and
- (b) - if that party fails timeously to do so, ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

### *4.4 Office of Rail Regulation's criteria*

In relation to the negotiation of any requisite adaptation, ORR shall be entitled to:

- (a) - give to the parties any criteria which it requires to be applied in the negotiations; and
- (b) - modify the criteria after consultation.

#### 4.5 *Procedural modifications*

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 3 for the agreement or establishment of requisite adaptations (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) - such procedure may be modified by ORR by a notice of procedural modification given by it to the parties; but
- (b) - ORR may give a notice of procedural modification only if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in section 4 of the Act or if such a notice is requested by both parties.

#### 4.6 *Dates*

In this Schedule 10:

- (a) - where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by ORR it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) - any notice given by ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

#### 4.7 *Requirement for prior consultation*

No relevant notice shall have effect unless:

- (a) - ORR has first consulted the parties and the Secretary of State in relation to the proposed relevant notice in question;
- (b) - in the consultations referred to in paragraph 4.7(a), ORR has made available to the parties and the Secretary of State such drafts of the proposed relevant notice as it considers are necessary so as properly to inform them of its contents;
- (c) - ORR has given each party and the Secretary of State the opportunity to make representations in relation to the proposed relevant notice and has taken into account all such representations (other than those which are frivolous or trivial) in making its decision on the relevant notice to be given;
- (d) - ORR has notified the parties and the Secretary of State as to its conclusions in relation to the relevant notice in question (including by providing to each such person a copy of the text of the proposed relevant notice) and its reasons for those conclusions; and
- (e) - in effecting the notifications required by paragraph 4.7(d), ORR has treated as confidential any representation (including any submission of written material) which (and to the extent that) the person making the



representation, by notice in writing to ORR or by endorsement on the representation of words indicating the confidential nature of such representation, has specified as confidential information.

#### 4.8 *Consolidated contract*

Not later than 28 days after the giving of the last of:

- (a) - a modification notice; and
- (b) - a notice of determined requisite adaptations or a notice of consent to requisite adaptations (as the case may be),

Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator, ORR and the Secretary of State a copy of this contract as so modified.

#### 4.9 *Saving*

Nothing in this Schedule 10 affects:

- (a) - the right of either party to approach and obtain from ORR guidance in relation to the requisite adaptations; or
- (b) - the right of ORR at any time to effect modifications to either the Network Code under Condition C8 of that code, or the Traction Electricity Rules pursuant to the provisions contained therein.

### 5 **Definitions**

In this Schedule 10:

<b>“backstop date”</b>	means the date (being not earlier than 28 days from the date of the modification notice) specified as such in a modification notice (or such later date as may be established under paragraph 3.5(a) or 4.6);
<b>“modification notice”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.1; -
<b>“notice of consent to requisite adaptations”</b>	means a notice given by ORR under paragraph 3.4; -
<b>“notice of determined requisite adaptations”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 3.7; -
<b>“notice of procedural modification”</b>	means a notice given by ORR to the parties under paragraph 4.5 modifying any aspect of the procedure in this Schedule 10 for the agreement or establishment of requisite adaptations;
<b>“ORR’s criteria”</b>	means the criteria established by ORR for the purposes of the negotiation of requisite adaptations and given to the parties, or modified, under paragraph 4.4;

<b>“relevant notice”</b>	means a modification notice, notice of determined requisite adaptations, notice of procedural modification or notice of modification of ORR’s criteria;
<b>“requisite adaptations”</b>	in relation to specified modifications, means the amendments (including the addition of information) to the provisions in question which are necessary or expedient so as to give full effect to them in the particular circumstances of the case, and “adaptation” shall be construed accordingly; and
<b>“specified”</b>	means specified in a modification notice.

**Schedule 11**

Not used.<sup>17th</sup>

With effect from the EG3 Phase 1 Effective Date, the Contract shall be amended as follows:

## **Schedule 11A Chiltern Main Line Works Rebate Mechanism<sup>73rd</sup>**

### **1 Definitions**

<sup>85th</sup> **Competing Train Operator Slot** means a Train Slot which has been included in the Working Timetable in accordance with Part D of the Network Code for which the Competing Train Operator holds, or subsequently obtains, access rights

**Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate** means £sum per Competing Train Operator Train Slot<sup>85th</sup> benefitting from any of the EG3 Phase 1 enhancements between London Marylebone and Aynho Junction, to be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$TRbC_t^1 = RbC_C^1 + RbC_L^1$$

where:

- (i)  $TRbC_t^1$  means the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate;
- (ii)  $RbC_C^1$  means Phase 1 rebate charge (capacity), calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$RbC_C^1 = \frac{(\sum FC_t^1 \times 0.29) / 365}{2 \times 18 \times 2}$$

where:

- (A)  $\sum FC_t^1$  means the sum of each EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge for all EG3 Phase 1 Deliverables in Relevant Year t, calculated in accordance with paragraph 8H.3 (b) of Schedule 7.
- (iii)  $RbC_L^1$  means Phase 1 rebate charge (line-speed), calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$RbC_L^1 = \frac{(\sum FC_t^1 \times 0.71) / 365}{2 \times 18 \times 5}$$

where:

- (A)  $\sum FC_t^1$  means the sum of each EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge for all EG3 Phase 1 Deliverables in Relevant Year t, calculated in accordance with paragraph 8H.3 (b) of Schedule 7.

**Competing Train Operator** means, following the date of Taking into Use of the first EG3 Phase 1 Asset, a train operator operating any passenger train service that accesses and

benefits from any of the EG3 Phase 1 enhancements between London Marylebone and Aynho Junction who has a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate in its track access contract with Network Rail which has been approved or directed by ORR

**Principal Change Date** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code

**Rebate Period** means the period from the first day of operation of the EG3 Phase 1 Timetable to the Principal Change Date occurring in 2020, unless prior to that date the Train Operator shall no longer be required to pay the EG3 Phase 1 Facility Charge, in which case this rebate period shall terminate on the date that such cessation of obligation comes into effect

## **2 Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate**

2.1 The Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate will be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in the event that:

- (a) there is a Competing Train Operator; and
- (b) Network Rail has recovered an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate in accordance with that Competing Train Operator's track access contract,

during the Rebate Period.

## **3 Network Rail Obligations**

3.1 Network Rail shall consider whether any track access contract, to be amended or entered into between the date of Taking into Use of the first EG3 Phase 1 Asset and the end of the Rebate Period, with a passenger train operator to include access rights which access and benefit from any of the EG3 Phase 1 enhancements between London Marylebone and Aynho Junction (the **Track Access Contract**) should include a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate.

3.2 In carrying out its obligation under paragraph 3.1, Network Rail shall apply:

- (a) the principles for a rebate mechanism set out in ORR's Final Conclusions for Proposals for a Rebate Mechanism for Investors in Large-Scale Enhancements dated June 2007, as may be amended from time to time;
- (b) the intended scope of the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate as set out in Network Rail and the Train Operator's section 22 application regarding the Seventy Third Supplemental Agreement to this Contract and ORR's decision letter regarding such application;

and it shall take into account:

- (c) the views of the Train Operator;
- (d) the views of the other party to the Track Access Contract;
- (e) any views from its consultation process;
- (f) any other relevant consideration.

3.3 Where Network Rail does not gain agreement from the other party to the Track Access Contract whether or not there should be a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate in the Track Access Contract then it shall apply to ORR for direction on such matter.

3.4 Where Network Rail gains agreement from the other party to the Track Access Contract whether or not there should be a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate in the Track Access Contract but the Train Operator does not agree with such inclusion or omission then Network Rail shall, before the Track Access Contract is approved or entered into, refer the matter to ORR to determine expressly whether such inclusion or omission is appropriate and Network Rail shall be bound by ORR's determination.

3.5 Where there is a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate in the Track Access Contract then Network Rail shall demand an amount equal to the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate from the Competing Train Operator during the Rebate Period in accordance with its obligations under the Track Access Contract and use its best endeavours to recover such sum from the Competing Train Operator as set out in paragraph 2.1 (b) above.

3.6 Any payment of the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement

Rebate by Network Rail to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 2 above shall be made within a reasonable time of Network Rail's recovery from a Competing Train Operator referred to in paragraph 2.1 (b) above.

#### **4 - Train Operator Obligation**

4.1 If, following any payment of the Chiltern Main Line Enhancement Rebate by Network Rail to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 above, it is determined under the Track Access Contract that the amount of the payment recovered, or part thereof, by Network Rail from the Competing Train Operator was not properly due then the Train Operator shall repay Network Rail such amount as is found not to have been properly due.

## Schedule 11B Bi-Ox Works Rebate Mechanism<sup>101st</sup>

### 1. Definitions

**Bicester South Junction** means the junction connecting the Bicester Town to Oxford route to the Chiltern Main Line at Bicester to be constructed as part of the Evergreen 3 Works

**Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate** means £sum per Competing Train Operator Train Slot benefitting from any of the EG3 Phase 2 enhancements between Oxford and Bicester South Junction, to be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$TRbC_t^2 = \frac{\sum \frac{FC_t^2}{365}}{2 \times 18 \times 4}$$

where:

(i)  $TRbC_t^2$  means the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate; and

(ii)  $\sum FC_t^2$  means the sum of:

(a) prior to the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, the Water Eaton Facility Charge and Oxford Facility Charge (as adjusted by the Adjustment Sum) and the Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge; and

(b) after the Final Contribution Sum Determination Date, the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge, the Oxford Final Facility Charge and the Wolvercot Tunnel Facility Charge,

in each case, in Relevant Year t, calculated in accordance with paragraph 8I.1, 8I.2, 8I.3, 8I.4, 8I.5 and 8J (respectively) of Schedule 7.

**Competing Train Operator Slot** means a Train Slot which has been included in the Working Timetable in accordance with Part D of the Network Code for which the Competing Train Operator holds, or subsequently obtains, access rights

**Competing Train Operator** means, following the first day of operation of the relevant EG3 Phase 2 Timetable, a train operator (other than the Train Operator) operating any passenger train service that accesses and benefits from any of the EG3 Phase 2 enhancements between Oxford and Bicester South Junction who has a mechanism for paying an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate in its track access contract with Network Rail which has been approved or directed by ORR

**Principal Change Date** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code

**Rebate Period** means the period from the first day of operation of the EG3 Phase 2 Timetable to the Principal Change Date occurring in 2020, unless prior to that date the Train Operator shall no longer be required to pay the Water Eaton Facility Charge, the Oxford Facility Charge, the Water Eaton Final Facility Charge or the Oxford Final Facility Charge (as appropriate), in which case this rebate period shall terminate on the date that such cessation of obligation comes into effect.

2. **Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate**

2.1 The Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate will be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in the event that:

- (a) there is a Competing Train Operator; and
- (b) Network Rail has recovered an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate in accordance with that Competing Train Operator's track access contract,

during the Rebate Period.

3. **Network Rail Obligations**

3.1 Network Rail shall consider whether any track access contract, to be amended or entered into between the date of Taking into Use of the first EG3 Phase 1 Asset, the Water Eaton Effective Date or the Oxford Effective Date (as the case may be) and the end of the Rebate Period, with a passenger train operator to include access rights which access and benefit from any of the EG3 Phase 2 enhancements between Oxford and Bicester South Junction (the "**Track Access Contract**") should include a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate.

3.2 In carrying out its obligation under paragraph 3.1, Network Rail shall apply:

- (a) the principles for a rebate mechanism set out in ORR's Final Conclusions for Proposals for a Rebate Mechanism for Investors in Large Scale Enhancements dated June 2007, as may be amended from time to time;
- (b) the intended scope of the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate as set out in Network Rail's and the Train Operator's section 22 application regarding the Seventy Third Supplemental Agreement to this Contract and ORR's decision letter regarding such application;

and it shall take into account:

- (c) the views of the Train Operator;
- (d) the views of the other party to the Track Access Contract;
- (e) any views from its consultation process;
- (f) any other relevant consideration.



- 3.3 Where Network Rail does not gain agreement from the other party to the Track Access Contract whether or not there should be a mechanism for payment an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate in the Track Access Contract then it shall apply to ORR for direction on such matter.
- 3.4 Where Network Rail gains agreement from the other party to the Track Access Contract whether or not there should be a mechanism for paying an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate in the Track Access Contract but the Train Operator does not agree with such inclusion or omission then Network Rail shall, before the Track Access Contract is approved or entered into, refer the matter to ORR to determine expressly whether such inclusion or omission is appropriate and Network Rail shall be bound by ORR's determination.
- 3.5 Where there is a mechanism for payment of an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate in the Track Access Contract then Network Rail shall demand an amount equal to the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate from the Competing Train Operator during the Rebate Period in accordance with its obligations under the Track Access Contract and use its best endeavours to recover such sum from the Competing Train Operator as set out in paragraph 2.1(b) above.
- 3.6 Any payment of the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate by Network Rail to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 2 above shall be made within a reasonable time of Network Rail's recovery from a Competing Train Operator referred to in paragraph 2.1(b) above.
4. **Train Operator Obligation**
- 4.1 If, following any payment of the Bicester South Junction to Oxford North Junction Rebate by Network Rail to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 above, it is determined under the Track Access Contract that the amount of the payment recovered, or part thereof, by Network Rail from the Competing Train Operator was not properly due then the Train Operator shall repay Network Rail such amount as is found not to have been properly due.

**Schedule 12 - Not Used**<sup>64th</sup>

## **Schedule 13<sup>5th</sup> Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications**

### **1. Automatic effect**

#### *1.1 General*

This contract shall have effect:

- (a) - with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications; and
- (b) - from the date,

specified by ORR in a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

#### *1.2 Retrospective effect*

A Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications may have retrospective effect.

### **2. Procedures governing Relevant Schedule 8 modifications**

#### *2.1 Negotiation of Relevant Schedule 8 Modification*

In respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) - the parties shall, within 28 days from the Start Date, meet and negotiate and attempt to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) - each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) - such negotiations are conducted in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) - ORR's Criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) - the negotiations shall not continue after the Backstop Date.

#### *2.2 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications - failure to agree*

If the parties fail to agree the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications on or before the Backstop Date:

- (a) - the matter shall be submitted to arbitration in accordance with Part C of the Access Dispute Resolution Rules; and
- (b) - Network Rail shall within 5 Working Days notify ORR in writing of such submission to arbitration.

#### *2.3 Use of Office of Rail Regulation's Criteria in arbitration*

If a matter is referred to arbitration under paragraph 2.2, the arbitrator shall be required by the parties to:

- (a) - determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications in accordance with ORR's Criteria and make such orders in his award as he considers necessary to establish the requisite Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) - provide reasons for his award; and

- (c) - state the extent to which and ways in which ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, give the reasons.

#### *2.4 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – notice to the Office of Rail Regulation*

Not later than 7 days after the Backstop Date or the conclusion of arbitration, as the case may be, the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall be sent by the parties to ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) - stating the reasons for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications;
- (b) - stating the extent to which and ways in which ORR's Criteria have been applied in determining the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) - giving such other information as ORR may have requested.

#### *2.5 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – Office of Rail Regulation's consent*

If ORR is satisfied with the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 2.4, and it gives a notice to that effect, such modifications shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 1.1.

#### *2.6 Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications – Office of Rail Regulation's refusal of consent*

If ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, it may:

- (a) - require the parties again to follow the procedure or any part of the procedure set out in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.4 for agreeing Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (with such modifications as to time limits as ORR specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) - following such consultation with the parties as it considers necessary, determine the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications itself and give a notice specifying such Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

#### *2.7 Payment adjustments*

Within 10 Working Days of the date of any notice referred to in paragraph 1.1 the parties shall make such adjustments to the payments made under Schedule 8 as are necessary to ensure that the parties are in the financial position in respect of the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications as if those modifications had had effect from the date specified in the notice given under paragraph 1.1.

### **3. Procedural matters**

#### *3.1 Co-operation and information*

If ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications or proposed Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications:

- (a) - the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by ORR; and
- (b) - if that party fails timeously to do so, ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it

without the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

### 3.2 *Office of Rail Regulation's Criteria*

Any Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications shall:

- (a) - ensure that Schedule 8 will maintain appropriate financial incentives on both parties in relation to Services, such that both parties are encouraged to maintain and improve operational performance, seeking to minimise lateness and cancellations;
- (b) - be drafted to meet a high standard of simplicity, clarity and legal precision;
- (c) - use definitions, terminology and numbering, including any bespoke provisions based on previous track access agreements, which are consistent with the defined terms, terminology and numbering used in this contract;
- (d) - take account, where relevant, of ORR's latest policy statements on the performance regime; and
- (e) - take account of the duties of ORR under section 4 of the Railways Act 1993.

### 3.3 *Procedural modifications*

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 2 for the Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) - such procedure may be modified by ORR by a Notice of Procedural Modifications; but
- (b) - ORR may only give a Notice of Procedural Modifications if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in section 4 of the Act or if it is requested by both parties.

### 3.4 *Dates*

In this Schedule:

- (a) - where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by ORR, it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) - any notice given by ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

### 3.5 *Consolidated contract*

Not later than 21 days after the giving of a Notice of Consent or Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications, Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and ORR a copy of this contract as so modified.

### 3.6 *Saving*

Nothing in this Schedule affects the right of either party to approach and obtain from ORR guidance in relation to Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications.

## 4. **Definitions**

In this Schedule 13<sup>44th</sup>:

**“Backstop Date”** means the date six weeks after the Start Date<sup>44th</sup>;

**“Notice of Consent”** means a notice given by ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.5; -

**“Notice of Determined Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications”** means a notice given by - ORR to the parties under paragraph 2.6 (b); -

**“Notice of Procedural Modifications”** means a notice given by ORR to the parties under - paragraph 3.3 modifying any aspect of the procedures in this Schedule; -

**“Office of Rail Regulation’s Criteria”** means the criteria set out in paragraph 3.2; -

**“Start Date”** means the later of the AVP Contingency Satisfaction Date (as such term is - defined in Schedule 5) or 14 December 2008;”<sup>44th</sup> -

**“Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications”** means: -

- (a) - any modifications to Appendix 1 of Schedule 8 and paragraph 14 of Schedule 8 which are necessary or desirable to achieve the objectives set out in ORR’s Criteria in the most efficient and economic manner; and
- (b) - any modifications to any other part of Schedule 8 of this contract which are necessary as a consequence of any modifications under paragraph (a).

**THE CHILTERN RAILWAY COMPANY LIMITED - CONSOLIDATED TRACK ACCESS  
CONTRACT**

**Explanatory Notes**

**First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 31 March 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement inserted a new Clause 20 (Implementation of 2003 Access Charges Review) into the Front Section of the Contract. It took effect from the Effective Date (31 March 2004) until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

**Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 April 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which are effective from the Effective Date (26 April 2004) until 23.59 hours on 27 April 2004 only. In Schedule 5, new paragraphs 2.13 and 2.14 relating to GSM Radio Testing were inserted.

**Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 May 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement inserted new sub-paragraphs 2.1(g) to 2.1(i) and 5.1(g) into Schedule 2 and a new paragraph 2.13 into Schedule 5. The amendments expired at 02.00 hours on 07 June 2004.

**Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 September 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedules 2 and 5 which are effective from 08 October 2004 until the Principal Change Date 2004. In Schedule 2, a new paragraph 4.1(b) was inserted. In Schedule 5, a new definition of "Vehicles" was inserted into paragraph 1.1, the wording of paragraph 2.6 was amended and a new paragraph 2.6(A) was inserted.

**Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 22 October 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Network Rail Debt Issuance Programme) General Approval 2004. In Schedule 7, paragraphs 1.1(a), 1.1(b) and 1.2 of Part 3A were amended and a new paragraph 2 of Part 1 was inserted.

**Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 22 October 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement inserted a new paragraph 2.13 into Schedule 5. The amendments expired at 23.59 on 19 November 2004.

**Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 November 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement took effect at 00.01 hours on 19 November 2004 and ceased to have effect at 2359 hours on 31 May 2005. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5.

**Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 December 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement took effect from the later of 10 December 2004 and the Principal Change Date 2004 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract. It made minor amendments to Schedule 1, inserted new sub-paragraphs (g) and (h) of paragraphs 2.1 and 5 in Schedule 2, replaced Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1, 8.2, 8.3 and 8.6 in Schedule 5, amended Appendix 7C to Schedule 7, inserted a new Clause 5.9 in Schedule 8 and inserted a new Schedule 13.

#### **Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 16 December 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments which are effective from the date of ORR approval (17 December 2004) until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

In the Front Section of the Contract, clause 1.1 was amended to include additional definitions and to replace some existing definitions. A new sub-clause 1.2(p) was inserted. Minor amendments were made to clauses 6.3 and 10.1. A new clause 11.7 was inserted. A new sub-clause (m) was added to clause 14.2.

In Schedule 4 new definitions were added to paragraph 1.1 of Part 3. Minor amendments were also made to paragraphs 2.3(c) and 2.4 of Part 3.

In Schedule 5 new definitions were added to paragraph 1.1 and new paragraphs 9 and 10 were inserted. A new Appendix 1 to Schedule 5 was inserted setting out replacement Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 8.3, 8.4 and 8.4(a) to be added at a later date determined in accordance with the provisions of new clause 9. In addition, express provision was made in respect of amendments to these Tables which may be affected by future supplemental agreements in the following terms:

- “(e) If, and to the extent that, between the date of this Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement and the Evergreen Tables Effective Date, the Base Access Rights are amended by means of any agreement which provides for amendments to be made to this contract which is:
- (i) approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act: or
  - (ii) directed by ORR under section 22A or 22C of the Act,
- (an “**Interim SG Supplemental Agreement**”) then, on the date of the Interim SG Supplemental Agreement, tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 8.3, 8.4 and 8.4(a) as set out in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 5 shall be replaced by the Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement Replacement Tables (as defined in the Interim SG Supplemental Agreement) as set out in the Interim SG Supplemental Agreement.”

In Schedule 7 new definitions were added to paragraph 1 of Part 1. Paragraph 1 of Part 2 was amended and new paragraphs 8(A) to 8(E) and sub-paragraph 10.1(E) were inserted in Part 2.

In Schedule 8 paragraphs 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12 were amended and the definition of “MLNR” in paragraph 9.1 was also amended.

A new Schedule 12 entitled “Impact of Evergreen 2 Modifications” was inserted.

#### **Tenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 December 2004**

This Supplemental Agreement took effect on 23 December 2004 and ceased to have effect 35 days after the end of the Period in which 1 January 2005 fell. It inserted a new paragraph 18 into Schedule 8.

#### **Eleventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 January 2005**

The copy of the 11<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR’s website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement inserted a new section of Table 2.2 and associated end notes relating to Service Group HO01 into Schedule 5. The amendments expired at 23.59 on the 28<sup>th</sup> day after (but including) 20 January 2005.

#### **Twelfth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 February 2005**

The copy of the 12<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR’s website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.



This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Table 2.1 of Schedule 5 and to Table 2.1 of Appendix 1 to Schedule 5 which are effective from the 18 February 2005 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

#### **Fifteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2005**

The copy of the 15<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR's website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2004 and contained three sets of amendments. The first set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 25 June 2005 until 01.59 hours on 27 June 2005. The second set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 30 July 2005 until 01.59 hours on 01 August 2005. The third set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 24 September 2005 until 01.59 hours on 26 September 2005. Each set of amendments caused a new paragraph 2.13 to be temporarily inserted into Schedule 5.

#### **Thirteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2005 (e)**

The copy of the 13<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR's website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement contained two sets of amendments. The first set of amendments to the section of Table 2.1 of Schedule 5 relating to Service Group HO03 and the notes to that table applied from 02.00 hours on 12 June 2005 until 01.59 hours on 11 June 2006. The second set of amendments, which replace footnotes 10 and 12 to Table 2.1 in Schedule 5, applied from 02.00 hours on 12 June 2005 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

#### **Fourteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 June 2005**

The copy of the 14<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR's website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Table 2.1, the notes to Table 2.1 and to Table 3.3 of Schedule 5 which are effective from the 12 June 2005 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

#### **Sixteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 27 July 2005**

The copy of the 16<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR's website and the execution date was advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement inserted a new section of Table 2.2 into Schedule 5. The amendments expired on 01 August 2005.

#### **Notice of Consent to Relevant Schedule 8 Modifications dated 03 August 2005**

Appendix 1 to Schedule 8 was deleted and replaced with a new Appendix 1. This amendment applies retrospectively from 12 December 2004.

#### **Seventeenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 28 November 2005**

The copy of the 17<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from Simmons & Simmons' file. The execution date and the date of ORR's approval were advised over the telephone.

This Supplemental Agreement has effect from 02.00 hours on 11 December 2005 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract. It makes consequential amendments that were necessary as a result of the Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement, such as deleting “; and” at the end of certain sub-clauses and replacing it with “;”. This Supplemental Agreement also specifies that the Contract be amended in accordance with the amendments made to it pursuant to the relevant changes specified in the review notice issued by ORR in respect of the 2003 Access Charges Review and which are contained in Schedule 11 (Access Charges Review) of the Contract. Clause 20 of the Front Section of the Contract and Schedule 11 were also deleted.

In Schedule 5, the heading, notes and the sections relating to Service Groups HO03 and HO02 of Table 2.1 were amended. New rows relating to Service Group HO02 and accompanying notes were added to Table 2.2. In Table 8.4(a), the section relating to the Banbury Station Stabling facility (including its heading) was deleted and replaced.

Paragraph 1 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 and paragraphs 5.9 to 5.12 of Schedule 8 were amended.

The heading “**Schedule 12 Impact of Evergreen 2 Modifications**” was inserted at the top of the first part of Schedule 12.

#### **Twentieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 December 2005**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2004. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 12 December 2005 until 02.01 hours on 24 December 2005.

#### **Eighteenth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 December 2005**

This Supplemental Agreement took effect on 23 December 2005 and ceased to have effect 35 days after the end of the Period in which 1 January 2006 fell. It inserted a new paragraph 18 into Schedule 8.

#### **Twenty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 25 January 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2004 and contained four sets of amendments. The first set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 04 February 2006 until 01.59 hours on 05 February 2006. The second set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 11 February 2006 until 01.59 hours on 12 February 2006. The third set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 18 March 2006 until 01.59 hours on 19 March 2006. The final set of amendments applied from 02.00 hours on 25 March 2006 until 01.59 hours on 26 March 2006. Each set of amendments caused a new paragraph 2.13, relating to Additional Passenger Train Slots between Marylebone and Harrow on the Hill, to be temporarily inserted into Schedule 5.

#### **Nineteenth SG Supplemental Agreement**

The section 22 application for a 19<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement was withdrawn by the Chiltern Railway Company Limited on 8 May 2006.

#### **Twenty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 01 June 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement contains two sets of amendments. The first set of amendments make minor changes, which apply from 02.00 hours on 11 June 2006 until 01.59 hours on 10 December 2006, to Table 2.1 in Schedule 5. The second set of amendments apply from 02.00 hours on 11 June 2006 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the contract and replace the section of Table 8.4(a) in Appendix 1 to Schedule 5 relating to the Banbury Station Stabling Facility.

### **Twenty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 13 July 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006. It deleted Table 2.2 of Schedule 5 (Additional Passenger Train Slots) and replaced it with a new Table 2.2. It had effect from 02.00 hours on 28 July 2006 until 01.59 hours on 31 July 2006 only.

### **Twenty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement**

This proposed Supplemental Agreement, which sought to insert a new paragraph 2.8 into Schedule 5, was rejected by the Office of Rail Regulation on 1 August 2006.

### **Twenty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 18 October 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which are effective from 13 December 2006 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract. Paragraph 2.8 is deleted and replaced with a new paragraph 2.8.

### **Twenty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 and Schedule 12 which are effective from 07 December 2006.

Paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 5 was amended by the insertion of new definitions of “December 06 Access Rights”, “December 06 Capacity Matters” and “Service Group Adjustment Period” and the alteration of the definitions of “Base Access Rights”, “Evergreen Tables Effective Date”, “Proving Period”, “Service Group Adjustment Process” and “Capacity Criteria”.

New paragraphs 2.13 – 2.17 were added to Schedule 5 and paragraph 9.10 of Schedule 5 was deleted and replaced with the words “Not Used”. The wording of paragraphs 9.12 and 9.13 of Schedule 5 was amended to reflect the deletion of paragraph 9.10.

In paragraph 10 of Schedule 5:

- the words “after the Subsidiary Change Date in 2008” were inserted into sub-paragraph (d) immediately after the words “the Subsidiary Change Date in any year”; and
- the word “Fourth” was deleted and replaced by the word “26th” wherever it appeared in sub-paragraph (e).

At the end of Schedule 5 a new Appendix 2 was inserted.

Paragraphs 1.3 and 3.2(b)(ii) of Schedule 12 were amended so that the words “Evergreen Rights” and “Amended Evergreen Rights” wherever they appeared were deleted and replaced by the words “December 06 Access Rights” and “Amended December 06 Access Rights” respectively.

In paragraph 2.7 of Schedule 12:

- the words “Proving Period” in sub-paragraph (a) were deleted and replaced by the words “Recalibration Period”; and
- sub-paragraph (b) was re-worded.

Paragraph 4 of Schedule 12 was amended by the insertion of new definitions of “Amended December 06 Access Rights” and “December 06 Access Rights”, the deletion of the definitions of “Amended Evergreen Rights” and “Evergreen Rights” and the alteration of the definitions of “Impact of Evergreen 2” and “Recalibration Period”.

#### **Twenty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 December 2006**

This Supplemental Agreement took effect on 22 December 2006 and ceased to have effect 35 days after the end of the Period in which 1 January 2007 fell. It inserted a new paragraph 2.18 into Schedule 5 and a new paragraph 18 into Schedule 8, both amendments relating to New Year services.

#### **Twenty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 January 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006 (although a drafting error in Clause 2 of the Supplemental Agreement refers to the 2004 General Approval). It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 10 January 2007 until 02.01 hours on 11 January 2007 only.

#### **Twenty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 23 January 2007**

The copy of the 29<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR’s website and the execution date was advised via email.

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006 (although a drafting error in Clause 2 of the Supplemental Agreement refers to the 2004 General Approval). It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 23 February 2007 until 02.01 hours on 24 February 2007 only.

#### **Thirty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 04 April 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 06 April 2007 until 02.01 hours on 09 April 2007 only.

#### **Thirtieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 April 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which are effective from the Subsidiary Change Date 2007 (20 May 2007). Table 2.1 of Appendix 2 in Schedule 5 was deleted and substituted with a new Table 2.1.

#### **Thirty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 May 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 12 May 2007 until 02.01 hours on 13 May 2007 only.

#### **Thirty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 May 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 26 May 2007 until 02.01 hours on 29 May 2007 only.

**Thirty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 27 July 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable Changes) General Approval 2006. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 27 July 2007 until 02.01 hours on 30 July 2007 only.

**Thirty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 September 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement inserted a new sub-paragraph (i) into paragraph 3.1 of Schedule 2. It took effect on 14 September 2007 and ceased to have effect on 08 December 2007.

**Thirty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2007**

The copy of the 11<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement used to complete this consolidation was obtained from the ORR's website and the execution date was advised via email.

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 and Schedule 12 which are effective from the 06 December 2007.

Paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 5 was amended by the alteration of the definitions of "Capacity Criteria", "December 06 Access Rights" and "Proving Period" and the deletion of the definitions of "Evergreen Capacity Matters", "Evergreen Rights", "Evergreen Service Groups" and "Evergreen Tables Effective Date".

New paragraphs 2.18 – 2.28 were added to Schedule 5 and paragraphs 9 and 10 and Appendix 1 of Schedule 5 were deleted in their entirety and replaced with the words "Not Used". The wording of paragraphs 9.12 and 9.13 of Schedule 5 was amended to reflect the deletion of paragraph 9.10.

Table 2.2 in Schedule 5 was deleted and replaced with a new Table 2.2 and, at the end of Schedule 5, Appendix 2 was deleted and replaced with a new Appendix 2.

In Schedule 12:

- the words "within 28 days of the end of the Recalibration Period" in paragraph 2.1(b) were deleted and replaced with the words "by 1 May 2008"; and
- the words "40 Working Days after the end of the Recalibration Period" in the definition of "Backstop Date" in paragraph 4 were replaced with the words "31 May 2008".

**Fortieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 December 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 27 December 2007 until 02.01 hours on 31 December 2007 only.

**Forty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 December 2007**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It took effect on 20 December 2007 and ceased to have effect 35 days after the end of the Period in which 1 January 2008 fell. It inserted a new paragraph 18 into Schedule 8.

**Forty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 March 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 20 March 2008 until 02.01 hours on 24 March 2008 only.

**Forty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted a new sub-paragraph (i) into paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 2 and inserted a replacement paragraph 2.13 into Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 05 May 2008 until 02.01 hours on 06 May 2008 only.

**Forty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 03 May 2008 until 02.01 hours on 05 May 2008 only.

**Forty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 24 May 2008 until 02.01 hours on 26 May 2008 only.

**Forty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 08 May 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which are effective from 18 May 2008 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract. Tables 2.1 and 3.3 of Appendix 2 to Schedule 5 were deleted in their entirety and replaced with new Tables 2.1 and 3.3.

**Forty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 May 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2007. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 31 May 2008 until 02.01 hours on 15 June 2008 only.

**Fiftieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 July 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement makes a temporary amendment to Schedule 5 pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2008, effective from 02.01 hours on 12 July 2008 until 02.01 hours on 06 September 2008 only. It inserted a new row into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5.

**Fifty-First SG Supplemental Agreement dated 24 July 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2008. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 25 July 2008 until 02.01 hours on 28 July 2008 only.

**Fifty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 August 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2008. It inserted new rows into Table 2.2 of Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 16 August 2008 until 02.01 hours on 17 August 2008 only.

**Fifty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 August 2008**

This Supplemental Agreement was entered into pursuant to the Passenger Access (Short Term Timetable and Miscellaneous Changes) General Approval 2008. It inserted a new sub-paragraph (i) into paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 2 and inserted a replacement paragraph 2.13 (Quainton Road Bank Holiday Shuttles) into Schedule 5. It had effect from 02.01 hours on 25 August 2008 until 02.01 hours on 26 August 2008 only.

**Forty-Forth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 December 2008 - Aylesbury Vale Parkway (AVP)**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedules 1, 2, 5 and 13 which are effective from 11 December 2008 until the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Amend page 1 of the contract to reflect change of registered offices by deleting and replacing parties' clause for both Network Rail and Chiltern Railways.

In Schedule 1:

- Delete and replace paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 in its entirety.

In Schedule 2:

- Addition of paragraph 2.1(i) to paragraph 2.1 "Main Routes".
- Amendment to paragraph 4.1(a), "Driver Training Routes".

In Schedule 5:

- New definitions to be inserted into paragraph 1.1 immediately following the defined term "Amersham" in relation to the addition of AVP.
- A new table, 2.3 'Passenger Train Slots – Aylesbury Vale', to be inserted immediately following table 2.2 to amend Schedule 5.
- A new paragraph 11, 'entitled AVP Rights' to be inserted after paragraph 10.

In Schedule 13:

- The defined term "Backstop Date" in paragraph 4 to be deleted and replaced in its entirety.
- The defined term "Start Date" in paragraph 4 to be deleted and replaced in its entirety.
- The number 11 contained in the phrase "In this Schedule 11" at the beginning of paragraph 4 to be deleted and replaced with the number 13.

**Fifty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2008 – December '08 Timetable Changes**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which is effective from 14 December 2008 and will cease to have on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Table 2.1 in Appendix 2 to Schedule 5 of the Contract shall be deleted in its entirety and replaced by new Table 2.1.

Table 3.3 in Appendix 2 to Schedule 5 of the Contract shall be deleted in its entirety and replaced by new Table 3.3.

Table 2.2 in Schedule 5 to be deleted and be replaced by Table 2.2.

#### **Fifty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 February 2009 – Route to Ilford Depot**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 2 which is effective from 25 February 2009 and will cease to have on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Deletion of paragraph 1.1 (d) in its entirety and replacing with a new 1.1 (d) paragraph.

#### **Fifty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 28 October 2008 – General Approval**

Amended Schedule 5 to add contingent rights for up to 34 additional passenger train slots between Marylebone and Harrow-on-the-Hill on 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, 29<sup>th</sup> and 30<sup>th</sup> November 2008. Agreement effective from 02:01 hours of 1<sup>st</sup> November 2008 and shall cease to have effect at 02:01 on 1<sup>st</sup> December 2008.

#### **Fifty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 September 2008 – General Approval**

Amended Schedule 5 to add contingent rights for additional passenger train slots, for 27<sup>th</sup> September, 28<sup>th</sup> September and 01<sup>st</sup> October 2008 in table 2.1. Agreement effective from 11:00 hours of 27<sup>th</sup> September 2008 and shall cease to have effect at 20:00 on 01<sup>st</sup> October 2008.

#### **Fifty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 November 2008 – General Approval**

Amended Schedule 5 to add contingent rights for additional passenger train slots, for 22<sup>nd</sup> November, 29<sup>th</sup> November, 06<sup>th</sup> December and 27<sup>th</sup> December 2008 in table 2.1. Agreement effective from 02:01 hours of 22<sup>nd</sup> November 2008 and shall cease to have effect at 02:01 on 28<sup>th</sup> December 2008.

#### **Fifty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 November 2008 – General Approval**

Amended Schedule 5 to add contingent rights for additional passenger train slots, for 06<sup>th</sup> December 2008 in table 2.1. Agreement effective from 02:01 hours of 06<sup>th</sup> December 2008 and shall cease to have effect at 02:01 on **07<sup>th</sup>** December 2008.

#### **Sixtieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 26 January 2009 – Amend Contract Date**

Amend clause 1.1 of the contract by replacing the date 2009 with 2010 in the definition of the expiry date.

#### **Sixty-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 17 December 2008 – General Approval for Special Events**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 which is effective from 17 December 2008 and will cease to have an effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract. This deletes existing clause 2.8 and replaces with a new 2.8 in its entirety.

#### **Thirty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement – not used**

#### **Forty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement – not used**



**Thirty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement – Performance Review Regime – dated 28 April 2008**

- Deletions and additions to clauses 1.1, 9, 11.3, 11.5, 17.1, 17.3, 17.9, 18.6.
- Deletions, new insertions and changes to Schedule 8:
  - i. New paragraph 18 (4 sections) inserted
  - ii. New paragraph 9 (two sections) inserted
  - iii. New Appendix 3 inserted
  - iv. Additional definition in paragraph 1.1
  - v. Changes and additions to paragraph 9
  - vi. New section added to paragraph 14
  - vii. Deletions, changes and new sections added to paragraph 17
  - viii. Appendix 1, columns A to K deleted and replaced with new columns A to K

**Sixty-Eighth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 31 March 2009 – ORR CP4 Periodic Review**

For or in connection with giving effect to the ORR's conclusions on the Periodic review 2008 - Determination of Network Rail's outputs and funding for the CP4 period to take effect from 01 April 2009 at 02:00 hours. The ORR directed the parties to amend each Track Access Agreement on the terms specified below:

- Schedule 4 replaced in its entirety to reflect financial changes under CP4. Further amends then made to paragraph 1.1 under 'SPD cost thresholds'. C
  - Cost figures under the definition of EBMPR in paragraph 4.2(b) also amended.
  - The two columns headed 'Year' and '£' in paragraph 1, Part 5, deleted and replaced in its entirety.
- Schedule 7 replaced in its entirety with the exception of Appendix 7C which remains unchanged to reflect financial changes under CP4.
  - Date changes made in paragraph 6 of part 2 of the schedule.
  - New table inserted in appendix 7D 'list of capacity charge rates'.
- Schedule 8 date changes made in paragraphs 9.1 and 19.2.
  - Additional dates changes made in paragraph 13.
  - Paragraphs 17.1 and 17.2 deleted and replaced in their entirety.
  - Columns B to I inclusive deleted and replaced in all the tables in Appendix 1.
  - Appendix 3 deleted in its entirety and replaced.
  - Table A in paragraph 14.10(a) deleted and replaced in its entirety (consolidated into contract under 14.09(a). A further supplemental required to correct this.
  - Date changes made in paragraph 14.09(b) (consolidated into contract under 14.09(a). A further supplemental required to correct this.

**Sixty-First SG Supplemental Agreement – Not Used****Sixty-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 19 January 2009 – new clause 20 added**

This Supplemental Agreement adds in a new clause 20 and shall have effect from the approval date and shall cease to have effect at 0159 hours on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

- Adds in a new clause 20 - Treatment prior to Implementation

- Adds in new definitions within the new clause 20

### **Sixty-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 29 April – changes to schedule 2**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 2 which is effective from 30 April 2009 and will cease to have an effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

By the insertion in paragraph 2.1 of the following new paragraph (j) beneath paragraph 2.1(i):  
“(j) From Aylesbury Vale Parkway to Quainton Road.”

By the deletion of paragraph 4.1(a) and the insertion of the following replacement 4.1.(a) paragraph:  
“(a) From Quainton Road to Claydon LNE Junction.”

By the insertion in paragraph 5.1 (i) of the following new paragraph beneath paragraph 5.1(h):  
“(i) From Quainton Road to Oxford via Claydon LNE Junction and Bicester

### **Sixty-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2009 – changes to schedule 5 and 12**

This Supplemental Agreement makes amendments to Schedule 5 and 12 which is effective from 30 April 2009 and will cease to have an effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Alterations made in Paragraph 1 (Definitions) of Schedule 5:

- Delete definitions **December 06 Access Rights** 39th in paragraph and **December 06 Capacity Matters** 39th in paragraph 1.1 in their entirety and amend the term **regulated access agreement** to **Regulated Access Agreement**
- Delete the definition “**Service Group 4**” or “**Aylesbury Group**” in paragraph 1.1 in its entirety and replace with the definition “**Service Group 4**” or “**Aylesbury Group**” “means those of the Services operating between London Marylebone and Aylesbury via High Wycombe”.
- Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 8.3, 8.4 and 8.4a were deleted and replaced in their entirety.
- Paragraphs 2.13 to 2.28 removed in their entirety.

Schedule 12 deleted in its entirety.

### **Sixty-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 April 2009 – changes to schedule 5**

This Supplemental Agreements makes amends to schedule 5 which is effective from 17 May 2009 and shall cease to have effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

- Table 2.1 deleted in its entirety and replaced by new Table 2.1.
- Table 3.3 deleted in its entirety and replaced by new Table 3.3.
- Table 2.3 deleted and replaced by new Table 2.3

### **Sixty-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 September 2009 – Amendments to Schedule 8 Appendix 1 and the addition of AVPW as a monitoring point**

- To amend drafting errors in appendix 1 of schedule 8 following the implementation of the ORR CP4 Periodic Review

- To ensure a clean copy of Appendix 1 following some differences in Appendix 1 after the 35<sup>th</sup> supplemental had been consolidated into the TAA
  - Addition of Aylesbury Vale Parkway as a new monitoring point
- Seventieth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 11 September 2009 – Amendments to Schedule 8, clause 14**

To amend drafting errors in clause 14 of schedule 8 (passengers charter).

**Sixty-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 14 September 2009 dated 14 September 2009– Moor Street – Amendments and additions to the clauses and Schedules 5, 7 and 8**

- Amendments to clause 1.1
- Provision to be added at end of clause 6.3; provision to be added at end of clause 10.1
- Schedule 5
  - Additions to paragraph 1.1; new paragraphs 12, 13 and 14
  - Additions to paragraph 2.2
  - Table 3.2 deleted in its entirety and replaced by new table 3.2
  - Table 3.3 amends to location and amend time in column 2
  - Table 8.4 insertion of a new row
- Schedule 7
  - Additional definitions in paragraph 1 of Part 1
  - Add new paragraphs 8F-8G to Part 2
  - Add new paragraph to 10.1 of Part 2 Payment of Access Charges
- Schedule 8
  - Amends to Table HO02 Off Peak in Appendix 1
  - Amends to Table HO02 Peak in Appendix 1

**Seventy-Second SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 December 2009 – December timetable and extension of agreement to expire on the Change Date in December 2014. Amendments and additions to clauses, schedules 2, 6 and 10 and replacement of schedule 1 and 5 in their entirety, approved 10 December 2009**

- Clauses 1.1 to 19.2 deleted and replaced with new clauses 1.1 to 19.2
- Schedule 1
  - Deleted and replaced in its entirety with new schedule
- Schedule 2
  - Paragraph 1.1(d) deleted and replaced with a new paragraph 1.1 (d):
- Schedule 5
  - Deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new schedule 5
- Schedule 6
  - Amends to paragraph 1.1 (f), (g) and a new paragraph (h) inserted
- Schedule 10
  - All references to “SRA” shall be deleted and replaced with “Secretary of State”

**Seventy-First SG Supplemental Agreement**

Not used

**Seventy-Third SG Supplemental Agreement dated 10 February 2010– Evergreen 3 Phases 1 and 2; amendments and additions to clauses, schedules 2, 4, 5 and 7 and new schedules added**

- Clauses 1.1, new definitions added and one amendment made. Three new clauses added
- Schedule 2
  - Amendments made affecting phase 1 and 2
- Schedule 4
  - New sub-paragraph in part 3 added
  - A new Schedule 4A added, effective from the EG3 Phase 2 Effective date
- Schedule 5
  - Effective from EG3 Phase 1 Effective date, new paragraphs added regarding the mechanism for Actual Proving
  - Appendix 2b added, effective from the EG3 Phase 1 Effective date
  - Effective from EG3 Phase 2 Effective date, new paragraphs added regarding the mechanism for Actual Proving
  - Appendix 8b added, effective from the EG3 Phase 2 Effective date
- Schedule 7
  - New provisions added at paragraph 8H onward
  - New paragraph added to 10.1 part 2
  - Amendment to appendix 7c
- Schedule 8
  - A new Schedule 8a added effective from EG3 phase 1 effective date
  - A new Schedule 8b added, effective from EG3 phase 2 effective date
- Schedule 11
  - A new Schedule 11a added effective from EG3 phase 1 effective date
  - A new Schedule 11b added, effective from EG3 phase 2 effective date

**Seventy-Fourth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 30 March 2010– To correct errors made in the 63<sup>rd</sup> SA to schedules 7 and 8**

- Schedule 7
  - Delete and add new definitions to Part 1
  - Paragraphs 8F-8G inclusive deleted from Part 2 and replaced with new paragraphs
  - Paragraph 10.1 sub sections renumbered
- Schedule 8
  - Appendix 1 table HO02 Off Peak and HO02 Peak deleted and replaced with new tables
  - Appendix 1 table HO02 Off Peak and HO02 Peak deleted and replaced with new tables which take affect from the MS Effective Date

**Seventy-Fifth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 20 May 2010– changes to schedule 1 and 5 – May 2010 Timetable**

- Schedule 1
  - New schedule 1
- Schedule 5
  - New Table 2.1
  - New Table 4.1
  - New Table 5.1

**Seventy-Sixth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 09 June 2010 – changes to schedule 5 General Approval**

- Appendix 1, table 5.1 Service Group HO02 amended by the addition of Class 67 and Mark 3 coaches – effective for 28 days only

**Seventy-Ninth SG Supplemental Agreement dated 08 October 2010 – changes to schedule 2, General Approval**

- A new paragraph in 4.1 to insert ‘Oxford to Didcot Parkway effective from 00:01 on 11 October 2010 and cease to have effect at 23:59 on 05 November 2010.

**Seventy-Seventh SG Supplemental Agreement dated 15 October 2010 – changes to schedule 5 and make minor clarificatory amendments to the clauses and schedules 6 and 7**

- To add some minor clarificatory amendments to the clauses and schedules 6 and 7 which occurred when drafting the 63<sup>rd</sup> and 73<sup>rd</sup> supplemental agreements
- Schedule 5
  - Amendments to Table 5.1 HO02 and HO03 Groups only to include one Class 67 and up to six Mark 3 coaches plus one DVT to the Additional Specified equipment field.

**Eightieth Supplemental Agreement dated 04 November 2010 – changes to schedule 2, General Approval**

- A new paragraph in 3.1 to insert ‘Oxford to Didcot Parkway effective from 00:01 on 05 November 2010 and cease to have effect at 23:59 on 05 November 2010.

**Seventy-Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 December 2010– changes to schedule 5 – December 2010 Timetable**

- Schedule 5
  - New Table 2.1, Table 4.1 and Table 5.1

**ORR Modification notice dated 17 December 2010:** This notice was issued in order to modify specified provisions in the track access contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took on 01 October 2010 (referenced as MOD A)

Changes to the following:

- Contents
- Clauses
- Schedule 4
- Schedule 5
- Schedule 6
- Schedule 8 (definitions only)

**Notice of consent to requisite adaptations December 2010:** This notice of consent was issued by the Regulator pursuant to agreed requisite adaptations in order to modify bespoke sections of the of the track access contract which depart from the Model Passenger Track Access Contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took effect on 1 October 2010 (referenced as Mod A(i) )

Changes to the following:

- Schedule 4A

**Eighty-First Supplemental Agreement dated 04 February 2011– changes to schedule 5, General Approval**

- Table 5.1 (specified equipment) deleted in its entirety and replaced with the new Table 5.1 which was to add in the Class 172 as additional equipment.

**Eighty-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 February 2011– changes to schedule 2, General Approval**

- Insertion in paragraph 4.1 of a new paragraph (b) beneath paragraph 4.1 (a) – Oxford to Bicester Town and cease to have effect on approval of the 83<sup>rd</sup> SA.

**Eighty-Second Supplemental Agreement dated 25 March 2011– changes to schedule 2, 5 and 7**

- Schedule 2:
  - Insertion in paragraph 3.1 of a new paragraph (i) beneath paragraph 3.1 (h) – Oxford to Didcot
- Schedule 5:
  - New table 5.1 HO02 service group
- Schedule 7
  - A new paragraph 3 of part 5 to be inserted for the ‘temporary variable charge for Class 172 rolling stock’

**Eighty-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 12 May 2011– changes to schedule 2, 4, 5, 7 and 8, to add rights to run services between Bicester Town and Oxford**

- Schedule 2:
  - Re-numbering and inserting new paragraph 2.1 (k) – Oxford to Bicester Town
- Schedule 4:
  - Annex A, B and C of Part 3 deleted and replaced with new annexes
- Schedule 5:
  - New HOO4 tables to 2.1, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1 and 6.1

- Schedule 7
  - Appendix 7C deleted and replaced with new appendix 7C
- Schedule 8
  - Addition of a new HO04 service group table to Appendix 1

**Eighty-Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 12 May 2011– amendments to clauses and to clauses and other schedules to modify bespoke sections of the of the track access contract which departed from the Model Passenger Track Access Contract consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to the new Part D to the Network Code which took effect on 1 October 2010**

- Amendment to clause 1.1 to delete definition of 72<sup>nd</sup> STAA and replace with new definition 78<sup>th</sup> STAA
- Clause 3.9(a) deleted and replaced with new clause 3.9(a)
- Schedule 5, paragraph 1.1, delete definition of ‘Base Access Rights’ and replace with new definition
- Specific clauses and definitions in schedule 5, 7,11A, 12B and paragraph in 1.4 of schedule 8 amended to reflect the bespoke modifications to Part D of the Network Code

**Ninetieth Supplemental Agreement dated 04 August 2011– changes to schedule 2 General Approval**

- Insertion in paragraph 3.1 of a new paragraph (j) beneath paragraph 3.1 (i) which took effect at 00:01 07 August 2011 and ceased to have effect at 23:59 on 07 August 2011.

**Eighty Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 26 August 2011– changes to schedule 2**

- Deletion of paragraph 1.1 (d) in its entirety and replaced with a new 1.1 (d)

**Eighty Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 29 June 2011 – changes to schedule 7, part 1 and 7**

- Additional definitions and or changes added to paragraph 1 of part 1 of schedule 7
- Substitution of a clause in paragraph 8H of part 7 of schedule 7

**Eighty Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 30 August 2011 – Evergreen 3 Phase 1 changes to schedule 5**

- New tables: 2.1 Passenger Train Slots, 4.1 Calling Patterns, 5.1 Specified Equipment

**Ninety-First Supplemental Agreement dated 24 October 2011 – changes to schedule 7, part 2 to correct an error in the Eighty Seventh SG**

- Substitution of a clause in paragraph 8H of part 2 of schedule 7

**Eighty Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 November 2011 – changes to schedule 7, parts 1 and 2**

- Additional definitions to paragraph 1 of part 1 of schedule 7
- Addition of a new paragraph 8L of part 2 of schedule 7
- Replacement of paragraph 10.1 (e) of part 2 of schedule 7

**ORR Modification notice dated 05 October 2011:** This notice was issued in consequence of changes made to the Access Dispute Resolution Rules by Proposal for Change 54 (PfC 54) with the specified modifications to take effect from 11 December 2011 (referenced as MOD B)

Amendments made to the following:

- Contents
- Definitions and clauses to the front end
- Schedule 4 part 3: paragraphs 5, 10, 12 and 13
- Schedule 5: paragraph 7
- Schedule 7 part 2: paragraphs 4, 9 and 10
- Schedule 8 paragraphs 16 and 17

**Ninety-Second Supplemental Agreement dated 13 January 2012 – changes to clause 1.1**

Changes made to regularise discrepancies within the 73<sup>rd</sup> SA which came to light following the approval of the 89<sup>th</sup> SA. These relate to the EG3 Phase 1 and the formal Taking into Use process.

**Ninety-Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 13 January 2012 – changes to Schedule 5, table 5.1: General Approval**

Schedule 5, table 5.1, Specified Equipment was deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new Table 5.1.

**Ninety-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 19 January 2012 – changes to Schedule 2: General Approval**

- Insertion in paragraph 3.1 of a new paragraph (j) beneath paragraph 3.1 (i) which took effect at 00:01 26 February 2012 and ceased to have effect at 23:59 on 26 February 2012.

**Ninety-Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 December 2012 – changes to Schedule 5**

Schedule 5, tables 2.1 (Passenger Train Slots), 3.3 (Earliest and Latest Passenger Train Slots), 4.1 (Calling Patterns), 5.1 (Specified Equipment) and 8.2 (Connections) deleted in their entirety and replaced with new tables, effective until 0200 hours on the subsidiary change date 2013.

**Ninety-Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 21 March 2013 – changes to Schedule 2: General Approval**

- Insertion in paragraph 2.1 of a new paragraph (m) beneath paragraph 2.1 (l) which took effect at 00:01 24 March 2013 and ceased to have effect at 23:59 on 24 March 2013.

**Ninety-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 16 May 2013 – changes to Schedule 8, Appendix 1**

- Changes to Appendix 1 HO04 Group, to introduce up-to-date performance data for the remainder of the control period.

**One-Hundredth Supplemental Agreement dated 17 May 2013 – May '13 timetable change, schedule 5**

- The following tables in Schedule 5 were deleted in their entirety and replaced with new tables:
  - 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 5.1 and 6.1

**One-Hundred & First Supplemental Agreement dated 29 August 2013 – to amend the financing arrangements for Evergreen Phase 2 to tie in with revised project structure**

- Front end – Definitions amended; clause 3.7 deleted and replaced
- Schedule 2 – Paragraphs 2.1(k) and (l) deleted and replaced
- Schedule 4A - amended
- Schedule 5 – Paragraphs 16.1 and 16.2 amended
- Appendix 8b of Schedule 5 – the deletion and replacement of the tables
- Schedule 7 – Various definitions deleted, new definitions added; changes to Part 2
- Schedule 8B of Schedule 8 - amended
- Schedule 11B – Deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new Schedule 11B



**One-Hundred & Third Supplemental Agreement dated 10 October 2013** – General Approval, to cover the Contingency arrangements for a delay to the statutory implementation of the 2013 periodic review (PR13)

- Front end - Clause 20 entitled “Interim Treatment of Access Charges Review” deleted and replaced with a new Clause 20

**One-Hundred & Second Supplemental Agreement dated 14 November 2013** – December 2013 timetable change – schedule 5

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table following the redraft into a clearer format
  - Tables 3.1, 3.3, 5.1, 6.1, 6.2 and 8.2 were deleted in their entirety and replaced with new tables as a direct consequence of the redraft to table 4.1

**One-Hundred & Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 20 December 2013 (General Approval)** – Boxing Day service – schedule 5

- Schedule 5
  - The addition of a new paragraph below 2.9 to agree to the operation of a Boxing Day service, London Marylebone to Bicester North, between the hours of 08:00 and 20:10 for 2013 only

**One-Hundred & Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 27 March 2014 – ORR CP5 Periodic Review**

Implementation of the 2013 periodic review (PR13) – this followed the publication of the ORR’s final determination on 31 October 2013, setting out the overall decisions on Network Rail’s outputs and funding for control period 5 (CP5), which took effect from 01 April 2014 at 02:00 hours. The ORR directed the parties to amend the Track Access Agreement on the terms specified below:

- Various deletions/changes/additions to definitions and clauses 1.2, 2, 2.1, 2.2, 7, 11.5(a), 13.1(a) 13.2, 14.6, 16.1.1, 16.1.2, 17.2(b), 18.2.3 and 18.7.4.
- Schedule 4 deleted and replaced in its entirety, with the exception of Annex B to Part 3 which remained in place, to reflect the financial changes made under CP5.
  - Definitions of SPD cost threshold no 1 and 2 deleted and replaced with a new definition
  - New column inserted into Annex B to Part 3
  - Change to paragraph 2.3(b), 2.3(c) and addition of 2.3 (d) in Part 3
  - Deletion of Annex C to Part 3 and replaced with new table
  - Part 5: new values applied following ORR letter date 10 February 2014
- Schedule 7 deleted and replaced in its entirety, with the exception of Appendix 7C which remained unchanged, to reflect the financial changes under CP5.
- Schedule 8 deleted and replaced in its entirety, with the exception of Appendix 1 to reflect the financial changes under CP5.
  - Columns B to I inclusive deleted and replaced in all the tables in Appendix 1
  - Columns J to O inclusive deleted and replaced in HO01 and HO02 tables in Appendix 1
  - New Appendix 2 inserted into the schedule
  - Deletion of Appendix 3 and replaced with new table
  - Additional text added in paragraphs 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12
- Schedule 10 deleted and replaced in its entirety.

**One-Hundred & Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 27 March 2014 – To correct errors in Schedule 8 Appendix 1 of the ORR CP5 Periodic Review**

- Schedule 8
  - Appendix 1, table HO01 Peak deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table to correct errors made in the periodic review implementation documentation for the monitoring point weightings for Amersham and Aylesbury.

**One-Hundred & Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 25 April 2014 – May 2014 timetable change**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

**One-Hundred & Eleventh Supplemental Agreement dated 25 August 2014 (General Approval) – changes to Schedule 2**

- Schedule 2
  - Insertion in paragraph 3.1 of a new sub section (j) to add in Fenny Compton Junction to Kington MOD to enable a special train to use the route on 02 August 2014 only.
  -

**One-Hundred & Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 02 September 2014 (General Approval) – changes to Schedule 5**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 5.1 (specified equipment) Service Groups HO02 and HO03 amended to include the addition of Class 68 locos

**One-Hundred & Twelfth Supplemental Agreement dated 24 October 2014 (General Approval) – changes to Schedule 2**

- Schedule 2
  - Insertion in paragraph 3.1 of a new sub section (j) to add in Kennington Junction to Morris Cowley GF to enable a special train to use the route on 05 November 2014 only.

**One-Hundred & Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 13 November 2014 – December 2014 timetable change**

Front end: Change to registered address for Chiltern Railways

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

**One-Hundred & Tenth Supplemental Agreement dated 19 December 2014 (General Approval) – Boxing Day service – schedule 5**

- Schedule 5
  - The addition of a new paragraph below 2.9 to agree to the operation of a Boxing Day service, London Marylebone to Bicester North, between the hours of 08:00 and 22:00 for 2014 only

**One-Hundred & Thirteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 24 March 2015 (General Approval) – special charter valid on 29 March 2015 only**

- Schedule 2
  - New paragraph (m) beneath paragraph 2.1 (l) to include location Birmingham International to Leamington Spa via Coventry

**One-Hundred & Sixteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 15 October 2015 to amend Appendix 1 of Schedule 8 for introduction of new Service Group (Oxford Parkway)**

- Schedule 8
  - Appendix 1 (HO02, HO04 Peak and Off-peak amended for introduction of new Service Group)
  - Appendix 1 (HO01, HO03 Peak and Off-peak amended to correct an error in PR13 methodology when calculating the benchmarks)

**One-Hundred & Fourteen Supplemental Agreement dated 23 October 2015 – Water Eaton Effective Date (25 October) to implement the amended rights for the Oxford Parkway Timetable**

- Schedule 5
  - Activate the draw rights approved in the 101<sup>st</sup> SA for operating services to Oxford Parkway and update the rights to reflect the bid and offered service pattern for the Oxford Parkway Timetable
  - Simplify the tables
- Schedule 1
  - Change to Registered Address
- Consequential changes to the Front End and Schedules 2, 5 and 7 to effect the changes within ORR's Model Clause Contract

**One-Hundred & Fifteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 23 October 2015 – Water Eaton Effective Date (25 October) to implement amendments to Schedule 4 and 7 for the Oxford Parkway Timetable**

- Schedule 4
  - Replace Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 with a new Annex A to Part 3
  - Replace Annex B to Part 3 of Schedule 4 with a new Annex B to Part 3
  - Replace Annex C to Part 3 of Schedule 4 with a new Annex C to Part 3
- Schedule 7
  - Replace Appendix C of Schedule 7 with a new Appendix C

**One-Hundred & Seventeenth Supplemental Agreement dated 09 December 2015 (General Approval) effective date 02:00 13 December 2015 and cease to have effect 23:59 March 2016**

- Schedule 5
  - New entry inserted into Table 2.2 in Service Group HO03
  - Amendment to number of rights in Table 2.1 in Service Group HO03, description 3.17

**One-Hundred & Eighteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 09 March 2016, amendment to Schedule 5**

- Schedule 5
  - Service Group HO03 in Table 2.1 (Passenger Train Slots) was replaced in its entirety

**One-Hundred & Nineteenth Supplemental Agreement dated 21 April 2016, amendments to Schedule 8 Appendix 1**

- Schedule 8
  - TOC payment rate in all Service Groups as shown in Table 2.1 (Passenger Train Slots) were amended to correct an error following the CP5 Periodic Review

**One-Hundred & Twentieth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 May 2016, May 2016 timetable change, amendments to Schedule 5**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 6.1 (journey time protection) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 8.2 (connections) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

**One-Hundred & Twenty-Second Supplemental Agreement dated 08 December, December 2016 timetable change**

- Amendments to Definitions in the front section for introduction of services to Oxford
- Amendment to Clause 3.7
- Schedule 4
  - Annex B to Part 3 deleted in its entirety and replaced with new Annex B to Part 4
- Schedule 5
  - Amendment to Definition ‘Other Services’
  - Paragraph 16.1 (a) deleted in its entirety and replaced with new paragraph
  - Paragraph 16.1 (b) deleted in its entirety and replaced with new paragraph
  - Paragraph 16.2 (a) excluding sub sections (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) deleted and replaced with new paragraph
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 6.1 (journey time protection) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Appendix 8b deleted in its entirety

**One-Hundred & Twenty-First Supplemental Agreement dated 13 March 2017: relating to Schedule 8 recalibration for the introduction of services to Oxford on 11 December 2016**

- Schedule 8
  - Amendments to Service Group HO04 Off Peak and Peak tables in Appendix 1 of Schedule 8. For ease, Appendix 1 was replaced in its entirety.

**One-Hundred & Twenty-Third Supplemental Agreement dated 04 May 2017: May 2017 Timetable Change**

- Schedule 5
  - Paragraph 5.1 deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new paragraph (to remove the firm rights to operate Class 121 vehicles)
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

**One-Hundred & Twenty-Fourth Supplemental Agreement dated 05 December 2017: December 2017 Timetable Change**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

### **One-Hundred & Twenty-Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 08 May 2018: May 2018 Timetable Change**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

### **One-Hundred & Twenty-Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 06 December 2018: December 2018 Timetable Change**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1(calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Paragraph 1.1: the definition for “Other Services” was deleted and replaced with a new definition

### **One-Hundred & Twenty-Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 18 December 2018: PR18 contingency arrangements**

- Deletion of Clause 20
- Schedule 7
  - New definitions added to Part 1
  - New paragraph (4) added to Part 7

### **One-Hundred & Twenty-Ninth Supplemental Agreement dated 18 March 2019: ORR CP6 (PR18 Periodic Review**

Implementation of the 2018 periodic review (PR18) – this followed the publication of the ORR’s final determination on 31 October 2018, setting out the overall decisions on Network Rail’s outputs and funding for control period 6 (CP6), which took effect from 01 April 2019 at 02:00 hours. The ORR directed the parties to amend the Track Access Agreement on the terms specified below:

Various deletions/changes/additions to definitions and clauses 1.1, 16.1.2 and 18.4.1 (b).

Schedule 4:

- Various deletions / insertions to paragraph 1.1 (definitions) of Part 3
  - Definitions of SPD cost threshold no 1 and 2 deleted and replaced with new definitions
  - Amendments to paragraph 3.4 (Formula) of Part 3
  - Amendments to paragraph 4.2 (Cost Compensation Formula) of Part 3
  - Amendments to paragraphs 9.1 (Early Notification), 9.2 (Notification by TW-22) and 14 (Indexation) of Part 3
  - Deletion of Annex A (Notification Factors) of Part 3 and replaced with a new table
  - Deletion of Annex C (Payment Rate per train mile) of Part 3 and replaced with new table
  - Deletion of Part 5 (Access Charge Supplement for Restrictions of Use) and replaced with a new Part 5

Schedule 7:

- Deleted and replaced in its entirety, with the exception of the definition of Wolverton Tunnel Capital Sum in paragraph 1 (Definitions), Appendix 7C (Default Train consist Data) and Appendix 7D (Metered Trains M) which remained unchanged, to reflect the financial changes under CP6.

Schedule 8:

- Various deletions / insertions to paragraph 1.1 (definitions)
  - Amendments to paragraph 1.2 (Interpretation)
  - Amendments to paragraph 3 (Calculation of Minutes Delay)
  - Amendments to paragraph 7 (Allocation of Minutes Late to Network Rail)
  - Amendments to paragraph 8 (Allocation of Minutes Late to Train Operator)
  - Amendments to paragraph 9 (Network Rail Performance Sums)
  - Amendments to paragraph 10 (Train Operator Performance Sums)
  - Amendments to paragraph 13.1 (Payment Rates)
  - Amendments to paragraph 15 (Notices)
  - Amendments to paragraph 17 (Amendments to Appendix 1)
  - Amendments to paragraph 18 (Compensation for sustained poor performance)
  - Deletion of paragraph 19 (SPP Indexation) and replaced with a new paragraph 19
  - Deletion of Appendix 1 and replaced with a new Appendix 1 to reflect the financial changes under CP6.
  - Deletion of Appendix 3 (SPP Threshold) and replaced with a new table

Schedule 9:

- Deletion and replacement in paragraph 1 (Definitions), relating to the Liability Cap

#### **One-Hundred & Twenty-Eighth Supplemental Agreement dated 14 May 2019: May 2019 Timetable Change**

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table

The changes made combines a small number of existing Banbury to Marylebone and Stratford upon Avon to Leamington Spa services to form through Stratford upon Avon to Marylebone services.

#### **One-Hundred & Thirtieth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 14 May 2019: Additional May 2019 Timetable Changes**

The purpose of this General Approval is to ensure the correct access rights are reflected in the TAC from the start of the May '19 timetable as a few amendments were missed from the May '19 timetable change external consultation (128<sup>th</sup> SA).

#### **One-Hundred & Thirty First Supplemental Agreement dated 31 May 2019**

The purpose of this agreement is to correct some discrepancies that were identified following the industry consultation for the May 2019 timetable change. There are some extensions to services and some services being removed or shortened. There are also some minor amendments to calling patterns and timing loads.

This makes permanent, similar short-term amendments which were made at the start of the May 2019 timetable by the 130th SA, shown above.

#### **One-Hundred & Thirty Second Supplemental Agreement dated 1 October 2019**

The purpose of this agreement is to reflect a number of changes for the December 2019 timetable change.

Schedule 5:

- Tables 2.1 and 4.1 in order to reflect changes to the services in the MET and JOINT service groups, a minor change to calling patterns in the BIRMINGHAM service group and some changes to timing loads.

**One-Hundred & Thirty Third Supplemental Agreement dated 8 April 2020**

The purpose of this agreement is to reflect some changes for the May 2020 timetable change.

Schedule 5:

- Tables 2.1 and 4.1 replaced in order to reflect some minor changes to calling patterns and timing loads, to introduce an additional morning peak time service between High Wycombe and Marylebone, and to extend a current Marylebone to Bicester service to Banbury in the evening peak (Monday-Thursday).

**One-Hundred & Thirty Fourth Supplemental Agreement (General Approval) dated 9 April 2020**

The purpose of this agreement is to reflect a change for the May 2020 timetable change.

Schedule 5:

- A new Table 2.2, Service Group HO02, added below the existing Table 2.2 for Service Group HO04 to reflect an additional service between Stratford-upon-Avon and Hatton.

**One-Hundred & Thirty Fifth Supplemental Agreement dated 30 June 2020**

The purpose of this agreement is to reflect a change for the May 2020 timetable change.

Schedule 5:

- A new line of entry to be added to Tables 2.1 and 4.1 in order to reflect an additional service between Stratford-upon-Avon and Hatton.

**One-Hundred & Thirty Sixth Supplemental Agreement dated 27 November 2020**

The purpose of this agreement is to reflect a change for the December 2020 timetable change.

- Schedule 5
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.

**One-Hundred & Thirty Seventh Supplemental Agreement dated 8 February 2021**

The purpose of this agreement is to extend the expiration date of the Track Access Contract, to remove Chiltern's Connections and Stabling Rights tables in Schedule 5, and to remove Journey Time Protection for the Birmingham Service Group.

- In Clause 1.1, the definition of "Expiry Date" shall be deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following: "Expiry Date means the Subsidiary Change Date in 2023".
- Schedule 5
  - Paragraph 8 deleted in its entirety and replaced with: "8. Other Rights: Not Used".
  - Table 2.1 (passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.
  - Table 2.2 (additional passenger train slots) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.
  - Table 4.1 (calling patterns) deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.
  - Table 6.1 deleted in its entirety and replaced with a new table.